PROPERTIES OF HYPERBOLIC GROUPS: FREE NORMAL SUBGROUPS, QUASICONVEX SUBGROUPS AND ACTIONS OF MAXIMAL GROWTH

By<br>Vladimir V Chaynikov<br>Dissertation<br>Submitted to the Faculty of the<br>Graduate School of Vanderbilt University<br>in partial fulfillment of the requirements<br>for the degree of<br>DOCTOR OF PHILOSOPHY<br>in<br>Mathematics<br>August, 2012<br>Nashville, Tennessee<br>Approved:<br>Professor Alexander Olshanskiy<br>Professor Mark Sapir<br>Professor John Ratcliffe<br>Professor Mike Mikhalik<br>Professor Thomas Kephart

To my parents
and Aliya

## ACKNOWLEDGMENTS

The author is grateful to his academic advisor A. Olshanskiy for suggesting the topic of this paper, valuable discussions, ideas and infinite patience. Without his support this dissertation would not be possible.

I would like to thank Denis Osin for his thoughtful suggestions and kind attention. The author is also grateful to Ashot Minasyan for referring him to papers [M-P], [Min] after the first draft of the paper [Cha1] was published on Arxiv.org.

Finally, I am thankful to the Department of Mathematics, and my colleagues and friends, in particular Romain Tessera, Bogdan Nica, Petar Markovich, with whom I had many discussions, not only about mathematics.

## TABLE OF CONTENTS

## Page

DEDICATION ..... ii
ACKNOWLEDGMENTS ..... iii
Chapter
I. INTRODUCTION ..... 1
I. 1 Main results ..... 1
II. HYPERBOLIC SPACES AND GROUPS ..... 6
II. 1 Hyperbolic spaces. ..... 6
II. 2 Hyperbolic Groups ..... 8
III. ON THE GENERATORS OF THE KERNELS OF HYPERBOLIC GROUP PRESENTATIONS ..... 12
III. 1 T. Delzant's small cancellation ..... 12
III. 2 Diagrams and small cancellation ..... 15
III. 3 Condition $C^{\prime}(\mu)$ and connection to $C(\varepsilon, \mu, \rho)$-condition ..... 20
III. 4 Generators of a free normal subgroup in $G$ ..... 24
III. 5 Proof of corollary I.1. 6 ..... 34
IV. HIGHLY TRANSITIVE AND PERIODIC ACTIONS OF MAXIMAL GROWTH OF HYPER- BOLIC GROUPS ..... 39
IV. 1 Actions of Maximal Growth ..... 39
IV. 2 Proof of Theorem IV.1.10 ..... 42
IV.3 Proof of Theorem I.1.8 and corollary I.1.9 ..... 54
IV. 4 Maximal growth highly transitive actions of hyperbolic groups. ..... 58
BIBLIOGRAPHY ..... 64

## LIST OF FIGURES

III. 1 Cancellation Tree ..... 14
III. $2 \varepsilon$-Contiguity ..... 19
III. $3 C(\varepsilon, \mu, \rho)=>C^{\prime}(2 \mu)$ ..... 20
III. 4 Standard Diagram ..... 23
III. 5 Bond Between $u$ and $v$ ..... 25
III. 6 To the Proof of Lemma III.4.14 ..... 31
IV. 1 Step I of IV.2.5 ..... 46
IV. 2 Lemma IV.3. 1 ..... 55

## CHAPTER I

## INTRODUCTION

In the founding paper [Gro] M. Gromov defined the notion of hyperbolic groups and outlined a number of research directions in this (now well established) area. As a subfield of geometric group theory, the hyperbolic groups are defined using the analogy between an algebraic objects - groups, and hyperbolic metric spaces and manifolds. The analogy between fundamental groups of compact surfaces and tessellations of a hyperbolic plane was surely known to Max Dehn, back in the wake of 20th century. Some of the early group theory methods such as small cancellation and Bass-Serre theory of groups acting on trees may be viewed now as early chapters of geometric (hyperbolic) group theory.

One of the most astounding facts about hyperbolic groups is often referred by saying that " hyperbolic groups are generic". By that one means the hypothesis of Gromov, stating that almost every group is hyperbolic (one can find both formalization and proof of such statement in [Olsh1]). Another excellent example of richness of the class of hyperbolic groups is that every (non-elementary group) $G$ is SQ-universal, i.e. every countable group can be embedded into the quotient of $G$. One of the results of this paper is a slight strengthening of this SQ-universality property (see Corollary I.1.5).

At the same time, one can also say that hyperbolic groups are "easy to deal with": the word problem (i.e. the algorithmic problem, asking if a word, encoding an element of the group, actually represents the identity element) is solvable in linear time.

In this dissertation we work with two very different classes of subgroups in a hyperbolic group $G$ : normal subgroups and quasiconvex subgroups. The first class of subgroups - normal- are embedded "nicely" in $G$ in the classical group theoretic sense, while the quasiconvex subgroups are embedded "hyperbolically" in $G$ as geometric objects. It is well known that a subgroup in $G$, which is both normal and quasiconvex, is either finite or of finite index (see [Arzh]) and hence, not very interesting. In one way, the two types of subgroups are "completing" each other in a hyperbolic group $G$ : if $\mathscr{H}$ is a quasiconvex subgroup, then there is a normal complement $\mathscr{N}$ intersecting $\mathscr{H}$ trivially ([Min], Lemma 3.8 or [GSS]).

## I. 1 Main results

In Chapter II we give basic definitions and properties which we will use later.
Chapter III is devoted to small cancellation constructions of the normal subgroups. In the first two sections we present the small cancellation techniques by T. Delzant and A. Olshanskiy. One finds the following Statement 5.3E in [Gro]:

There exists a constant $m=m(k, \delta)$ such that for every $k$ hyperbolic elements $x_{1}, \ldots, x_{k}$ in a word $\delta$-hyperbolic group $G$ the normal subgroup generated by $x_{1}^{m_{1}}, \ldots, x_{k}^{m_{k}}$ is free for all $m_{i} \geq m$.

Although not correct in full generality (as a counter-example in the appendix to [Delz] shows) the following theorems are true:

Theorem I.1.1. (Delzant [Delz], Theoremé I) Let Ge a non-elementary $\delta$-hyperbolic group. There
exists an integer $N$ such that for any elements $f_{1}, \ldots, f_{n}$ such that $\left[\left[f_{i}\right]\right]=\left[\left[f_{j}\right]\right] \geq 1000 \delta$ (where $[[f]]=$ $\lim _{n \rightarrow \infty} \frac{\left|f^{n \mid}\right|}{n}$ ), the normal subgroup $\mathscr{N}\left(f_{1}^{k N}, \ldots, f_{n}^{k N}\right)$ is free for every $k$. Moreover, (for every $k$ ) the group $G / \mathscr{N}\left(f_{1}^{k N}, \ldots, f_{n}^{k N}\right)$ is hyperbolic.

The Theorem I.1.1 is obtained in [Delz] from Theorem I.1.2 by arguing that for sufficiently large $N$ (independent of choice $f_{i}$ ) the system of elements $f_{1}^{N}, \ldots, f_{n}^{N}$ can be completed to that satisfying small cancellation $C^{\prime}(\mu)$ (see definition III.1.4).

Theorem I.1.2. (Delzant [Delz], Theorem é II) Let $\mathscr{R}$ be a finite set of elements satisfying the the small cancellation condition $C^{\prime}(\mu)$. A normal subgroup $\mathscr{N}(\mathscr{R})$ generated by $\mathscr{R}$ is free. The quotient $G / \mathscr{N}(\mathscr{R})$ is hyperbolic.

However we think that the proof of Theorem I.1.2 requires some additional arguments. To be more precise, the proof of the Theorem 2.1 (iii) [Delz] pp 677-678 (stating that if a (finite) system $\mathscr{R}$ satisfies condition $C^{\prime}(\mu), \mu<1 / 8$ then the normal subgroup $\mathscr{N}(\mathscr{R})$ generated by $\mathscr{R}$ is free) is incomplete. We provide a proof of essentially the same fact in somewhat different setting (in particular, the set $\mathscr{R}$ can be infinite) using both techniques of Delzant (such as Lemmas III.1.6, III.1.10) and diagram techniques of A. Olshanskiy from [Olsh], [Olsh93]. We would like to note that the Lemma III.4.10 of this paper provides justification for the formula on top of page 678 of [Delz]. One may replace Theorem I.1.2 with the following statement:

Theorem I.1.3. There exists $\mu_{0}>0$ such that for any $\mu<\mu_{0}$ there are $\varepsilon$ and $\rho$ such that if $\mathscr{R}$ is a set of geodesic words satisfying $\tilde{C}(\varepsilon, \mu, \rho)$-condition (see Definition III.2.9) in the hyperbolic group $G$ then:
(i) the normal subgroup $\mathscr{N}=\mathscr{N}(\mathscr{R})$ is free;
(ii) if $G$ is non-elementary and $\mathscr{R}$ is finite then $G / \mathscr{N}(\mathscr{R})$ is non-elementary hyperbolic.

As a corollary we get:
Theorem I.1.4. Let $G$ be a non-elementary hyperbolic group. For any finite set of elements $x_{1}, \ldots, x_{m}$ there exists an integer $N$ such that the normal closure $\mathscr{N}=\mathscr{N}\left(x_{1}^{s_{1} N}, \ldots, x_{m}^{s_{m} N}\right)$ in $G$ of elements $x_{1}^{s_{1} N}, \ldots, x_{m}^{s_{m} N}$ is free for any integer $s_{i}>0$ and the quotient $G / \mathscr{N}$ is non-elementary hyperbolic.

A stronger and more general version of the above statement, using the language of rotating families, appeared recently (but after [Cha]) in the paper [DGO], theorem 2.13.

Let us note that in our result I.1.4, the choice of constant $N$ depends on the elements $x_{1}, \ldots, x_{m}$ rather then being an absolute constant as in Theorem I.1.1. On the other hand we do not assume any significant restrictions on the set of elements $x_{1}, \ldots, x_{m}$.

The following Corollary somewhat strengthens the Theorem proved by T. Delzant and A. Olshanskiy independently (see [Delz], [Olsh95]) stating that every non-elementary hyperbolic group is SQ-universal.

Corollary 1.1.5. Let $G$ be a non-elementary hyperbolic group. Then:
(i) there exists a free normal subgroup $\mathscr{N}$ of $G$ of rank greater than 1;
(ii) for any free normal subgroup $\mathscr{N}$ of rank greater than 1 and any countable group $H$ there exists a free subgroup $M<\mathscr{N}, M \triangleleft G$ such that $H$ embeds in quotient $G / M$.

As an application of Theorem I.1.3 we also obtain:
Corollary 1.1.6. Let $G$ be a non-elementary hyperbolic group. Then there exist free normal subgroups of infinite index $A, B$ such that $A B=G$ if and only if $Z(G)=E(G)$.

We would like to mention the following
Open problem ([Kour], 15.69): Does every hyperbolic group $G$ have a free normal subgroup $N$ such that the quotient $G / N$ is a torsion group of bounded exponent?

The above problem is motivated by the result of Ivanov and Olshanskiy [ $\mathbf{I v O l}]$ stating that for every nonelementary hyperbolic group $G$ there is a number $n=n(G)$ such that the quotient group $G / G^{n}$ is infinite.

In Chapter IV we discuss the growth of highly transitive actions of hyperbolic groups. We generalize some results of [BO], where the authors discuss the notion of growth of actions of a group (monoid, ring) on a set (module).

Let us denote the growth function of a transitive action of a group $G$ generated by a finite set $S$ on a set $X$ with respect to some base point $o \in X$ by $g_{o, S}(n)=\#\left\{o^{\prime}=o g| | g \mid \leq n\right\}$ (see section IV.1). A distinguished class of actions defined and studied in $[\mathbf{B O}]$ is that of actions of maximal growth. We observe that in case of a non-amenable group $G$ the growth of action of $G$ on $X$ is maximal if there exists $c_{1}>0$ such that

$$
c_{1} f(n) \leq g_{o, S}(n)
$$

for every natural $n$, where $f(n)$ is the growth of the group $G$ itself (see remark IV.1.4). In general, the notion of maximal growth depends on the choice of the generating set $S$ of the group, thus throughout the Chapter IV we assume that $S$ is fixed. The author tends to consider the maximal growth action as a new characterization for the finite radical of the hyperbolic group. One observes in remark IV.1.11 that the kernel of arbitrary 2 -transitive action of maximal growth by a hyperbolic group $G$ is exactly the finite radical $E(G)$.

In [BO] the authors construct some examples of actions by the free group of maximal growth and satisfying additional properties, see for example corollary IV.1.9. The first result of our paper is the following broadening of the aforementioned corollary:

Theorem I.1.7. Let $G$ be a non-elementary hyperbolic group. Then there exist a set $X$ and a transitive action of $G$ on $X$ such that the growth of this action is maximal, each orbit of action by every element $g \in G$ is finite and the stabilizer of every element $x \in X$ is a free group.

One can observe that the above result follows from Theorem IV.1.10 in this paper.
The Theorem IV.1.10 stems from the technical result IV.2.8, which also allows us to generalize and strengthen the result of Arzhantseva [Arzh] conjectured by M. Gromov [Gro].

The following Theorem and corollary generalize Theorem 1 in [Arzh] by removing the requirement on the hyperbolic group to be torsion-free and formulating the necessary and sufficient conditions. We recall the notation $E(g)$ - a unique maximal elementary subgroup of hyperbolic group $G$ containing $g$ (it exists whenever $g$ is of infinite order, see section II.1). Recall also that there exists a unique finite maximal normal subgroup $E(G)$ in every non-elementary hyperbolic group $G$. We will call $E(G)$ the finite radical ${ }^{1}$ of $G$.

[^0]Theorem I.1.8. Let $G$ be a non-elementary hyperbolic group and $\mathscr{H}$ be a quasiconvex infinite index subgroup of $G$.
(i) Consider an element $x$ in $G$ of infinite order. Then the following are equivalent:
(a) there exists a natural number $t>0$ such that the subgroup $\left\langle\mathscr{H}, x^{t}\right\rangle$ (i.e. generated by $\mathscr{H}$ and $x^{t}$ ) is isomorphic to $\mathscr{H} *\left\langle x^{t}\right\rangle$;
(b) $E(x) \cap \mathscr{H}=\{e\}$.
(ii) ${ }^{2}$ An element $x$, satisfying part (i), exists if and only if $\mathscr{H} \cap E(G)=\{e\}$.
(iii) If $\mathscr{H} \cap E(G)=\{e\}$ then for $x$ and $t$ described in part (i) the subgroup $\left\langle\mathscr{H}, x^{t}\right\rangle$ is quasiconvex of infinite index and the intersection $E(G) \cap\left\langle\mathscr{H}, x^{t}\right\rangle$ is trivial.

Part (i) of Theorem I.1.8 follows also from a more general statement in [M-P](Corollary 1.12) and a particular case when $E(x)=E^{+}(x)$ appears in Theorem 5 [Min]. We also formulate the following (somewhat more general) result concerning arbitrary quasiconvex subgroups of infinite index.

Corollary I.1.9. Let $G$ be a non-elementary hyperbolic group and $\mathscr{H}$ be a quasiconvex subgroup of infinite index in $G$. Then there exists $g \in G$ of infinite order such that $\langle\mathscr{H} \cdot E(G), g\rangle \cong \mathscr{H} \cdot E(G) *_{E(G)}\langle g, E(G)\rangle$. Moreover $\langle\mathscr{H} \cdot E(G), g\rangle$ is a quasiconvex subgroup of infinite index.

The main results of this chapter concern the highly transitive actions of finitely generated groups (i.e. the actions which are $k$-transitive for every $k \in \mathbb{N}$ ) on infinite countable sets. The first result of this sort, known to the author, is that finitely generated non-abelian free groups admit faithful highly transitive actions, [McD]. In recent years, similar results has been proved for several classes of groups, we summarized thm in the following:

Theorem I.1.10. ([GaGl], [MoSt], [Kit]) The following groups admit a highly transitive faithful action on infinite countable sets:
(i) the fundamental group of a closed orientable surface of genus $>1$;
(ii) free products $G * H$ where at least $G$ or $H$ is not isomorphic to $\mathbb{Z}_{2}$;
(iii) The group of outer automorphisms of the free group $\operatorname{Out}\left(F_{n}\right)$ for $n>3$.

Theorem I.1.11 is our main result of the chapter, it includes the case of fundamental groups of the closed orientable surfaces of genus $>1$ as well as some of the free products $G * H$, described by I.1.10(ii). Moreover, in some statistical sense (see [Olsh1]), almost every finitely presented group is hyperbolic. Thus, almost every group satisfies conditions (i)-(iv) of the Theorem below.

Theorem I.1.11. Let $G$ be a non-elementary $\delta$-hyperbolic group. There exist a set $X$ and an action of maximal growth of $G$ on $X$ such that:
(i) each orbit of action by every element $g \in G$ is finite;
(ii) the action is highly transitive;
(iii) the stabilizer of every point $x \in X$ is an extension of $E(G)$ by a free group;
(iv) the kernel of the action is the finite radical $E(G)$ of $G$.

[^1]We would also like to stress that if we assume (in the Theorem I.1.11) that the finite radical $E(G)$ of the group $G$ is trivial, then the action is faithful and the stabilizer of every $x \in X$ is a maximal free subgroup of $G$ (see also corollary IV.4.7).

## CHAPTER II

## HYPERBOLIC SPACES AND GROUPS

## II. 1 Hyperbolic spaces

We recall some definitions and properties from the founding article of Gromov [Gro] (see also [Ghys]). Let $(X,| |)$ be a metric space. We sometimes denote the distance $|x-y|$ between $x, y \in X$ by $d(x, y)$. We assume that $X$ is geodesic, i.e. every two points can be connected by a geodesic line. We refer to a geodesic between some point $x, y$ of $X$ as $[x, y]$. For convenience we denote by $|x|$ the distance $\left|x-y_{0}\right|$ to some fixed point $y_{0}$ (usually the identity element of the group).

For a path $\gamma$ in $X$ we denote the initial (terminal) vertex of $\gamma$ by $\gamma_{-}\left(\gamma_{+}\right)$, denote by $\|\gamma\|$ the length of path $\gamma$ and by $|\gamma|$ the distance $\left|\gamma_{+}-\gamma_{-}\right|$. Recall that if $0<\lambda \leq 1$ and $c \geq 0$ then a path $\gamma$ in $X$ is called $(\lambda, c)$-quasigeodesic if for every subpath $\gamma_{1}$ of $\gamma$ the following inequality is satisfied:
$\left\|\gamma_{1}\right\| \leq \frac{1}{\lambda}\left|\gamma_{1}\right|+c$.
We call the path $\gamma$ geodesic up to $c$, if it is $(1, c)$-quasigeodesic.
Define a scalar (Gromov) product of $x, y$ with respect to $z$ by formula

$$
(x, y)_{z}=\frac{1}{2}(|x-z|+|y-z|-|x-y|) .
$$

An (equivalent) implicit definition of the Gromov product illustrates its geometric significance:

$$
\begin{equation*}
(x, y)_{z}+(x, z)_{y}=|z-y| \tag{II.1}
\end{equation*}
$$

$$
\begin{aligned}
& (x, y)_{z}+(y, z)_{x}=|z-x| \\
& (y, z)_{x}+(z, x)_{y}=|x-y|
\end{aligned}
$$

A space $X$ is called $\delta$-hyperbolic if there exists a non-negative integer $\delta$ such that the following inequality holds:

$$
\text { (H1) } \forall x, y, z, t \in X,(x, y)_{z} \geq \min \left\{(x, t)_{z},(y, t)_{z}\right\}-\delta .
$$

The condition (H1) implies (and in fact is equivalent up to constant) the following:
(H2) For every triple of points $x, y, z$ in $X$ every geodesic $[x, y]$ is within the (closed) $4 \delta$-neighborhood of the union $[x, z] \cup[y, z]$.
(H3) For every four points $x, y, z$, tin $X$ we have $|x-y|+|z-t| \leq \max \{|x-z|+|y-t|,|x-t|+|y-z|\}+$ $2 \delta$.

We will need a few properties of hyperbolic spaces and Gromov products:
Lemma II.1.1. ([Delz], Lemma 1.3.3) Let $K$ be a nonnegative real number, $[x, y]$ and $\left[x^{\prime}, y^{\prime}\right]$ - two segments in a $\delta$-hyperbolic space of length at least $2 K+20 \delta$ and suppose that $\left|x-x^{\prime}\right| \leq K,\left|y-y^{\prime}\right| \leq K$. Choose
points $u$ and $v$ on $[x, y]$ at distance $K+2 \delta$ from $x$ and $y$ respectively. Then every point $P$ on $[u, v]$ is in the $6 \delta$-neighborhood of the segment $\left[x^{\prime}, y^{\prime}\right]$.

Lemma II.1.2. ([Ghys], Chapter 3, §17) For any three points $x, y, z$ in a $\delta$-hyperbolic space $X$, we have $d(x,[y, z])-\delta \leq\langle y, z\rangle_{x} \leq d(x,[y, z])$.

We will use the following easy remark.
Remark II.1.3. Let $X$ be a hyperbolic space. Then:
(i) In the notations of Lemma II.1.1 it is immediate that the segment $[x, y]$ is within $K+2 \delta+6 \delta$ neighborhood of $\left[x^{\prime}, y^{\prime}\right]$.
(ii) Suppose $\gamma$ is a path, geodesic up to some $c \geq 0$ in $X$, and $o$ is an arbitrary point on $\gamma$. Then

$$
\begin{equation*}
\left(\gamma_{-}, \gamma_{+}\right)_{o} \leq c / 2 \tag{II.2}
\end{equation*}
$$

Combining the previous inequality with Lemma II.1.2 we get that:

$$
\begin{equation*}
d\left(o,\left[\gamma_{-}, \gamma_{+}\right]\right)-\delta \leq c / 2 \tag{II.3}
\end{equation*}
$$

We recall the notion of the metric tree $T$ ([Ghys], Chapter 2, §1). Let $T^{\prime}$ be a tree (i.e. graph without cycles), we construct the geometric realization $T$ in the following way. For every edge $a$ of $T^{\prime}$ we choose a real positive number $l(a)$. Then there exists a unique (up to isometry) metric $d$ on $T$ maximal with respect to the following condition: edge $a$ is isometric to interval $[0, l(a)]$ on the real line. Then $T$ with the metric $d$ is a metric tree.

Various versions of the following Gromov's Theorem provide an approximation of a finite set of geodesics in hyperbolic space by metric trees:

Theorem II.1.4. ([Ghys], Chapter 2, Theorem 12) Let $F$ be a $\delta$-hyperbolic metric space. Suppose that $F=\cup_{i=1}^{n} F_{i}$, where each $F_{i}=\left[w, w_{i}\right]$ is a geodesic and $n \leq 2^{k}$.

Then there exists a metric tree $T$ and function $\Phi: F \rightarrow T$ such that
(i) $|[\Phi(x), \Phi(w)]|=|[x, w]|, \forall x \in F$;
(ii) $|x-y|-2(k+1) \delta \leq|\Phi(x)-\Phi(y)| \leq|x-y|$ for all $x, y \in F$.

It is clear that if $x$ is some vertex in a metric graph $T$ in the Theorem above then either
(i) there exist some indexes $i, j$ such that the images of $F_{i}$ and $F_{j}$ under $\Phi$ depart at $x: \Phi\left(\left[w, w_{i}\right]\right) \cap$ $\Phi\left(\left[w, w_{j}\right]\right)=[\Phi(w), x]$ (in this case we call vertex $x$ a branching point), or
(ii) there exists some index $i$ such that $\Phi\left(w_{i}\right)=x$ or $\Phi(w)=x$. In this case we call $x$ a leaf (because it is adjacent to a single vertex).

When we talk about an approximation tree for a set of vertices $w, w_{1}, \ldots, w_{n}$ in the hyperbolic space $X$, we mean an approximation of the set $F=\cup_{i=1}^{n} F_{i}$ in the sense of the previous Theorem.

By a tripod we mean a metric tree with one branching point (center $o$ ) and three edges (pods).
Remark II.1.5. ([Ghys] Chapter 2, $\S 1)$ Let $x, y, z$ be some points in a $\delta$-hyperbolic space $X$, and $o_{1}$ be a point on $[x, y]$ at distance $s \leq(y, z)_{x}$ from $x, o_{2}$ be on $[x, z]$ at distance $s$ from $x$. Then there exists a tripod $T$ and a map $\Phi:[x, y] \cup[x, z] \longrightarrow T$ such that:
(i) a restriction of the map $\Phi$ on each segment $[x, y],[x, z]$ is an isometry which sends $x, y, z$ to different ends of pods of $T$ and $\Phi\left(o_{1}\right)=\Phi\left(o_{2}\right)$;
(ii) $\Phi, T$ satisfies the previous Theorem.

Lemma II.1.6. ([Gro], [Ghys] p. 87) There exists a constant $H=H(\boldsymbol{\delta}, \boldsymbol{\lambda}, c)$ such that for any $(\boldsymbol{\lambda}, c)$ quasigeodesic path $p$ in a $\delta$-hyperbolic space and any geodesic path $q$ with conditions $q_{-}=p_{-}$and $q_{+}=$ $p_{+}$, the paths $p$ and $q$ are within (closed) $H$-neighborhoods of each other.

## II. 2 Hyperbolic Groups

Let $G$ be a finitely presented group with presentation $g p(S \mid \mathscr{D})$. We assume that no generator in $S$ is equal to $e$ in $G$. We consider $G$ as a metric space with respect to the distance function $|g-h|=\left|g^{-1} h\right|$ for every $g$ and $h$. We denote by $|g|$ the length of a minimal (geodesic) word with respect to the generators $S$ equal to $g$. The notation $(g, h)$ is the Gromov product $(g, h)_{e}$ with respect to the identity vertex $e$.

We denote the (right) Cayley graph of the group by $\operatorname{Cay}(G)$. The graph $\operatorname{Cay}(G)$ has a set of vertices $G$, and a pair of vertices $g_{1}, g_{2}$ is connected by an edge of length 1 labeled by $s$ if and only if $g_{1}^{-1} g_{2}=s$ in $G$ for some $s \in S^{ \pm 1}$. It is clear that $\operatorname{Cay}(G)$ may be considered as a geodesic space: one identifies every edge of $\operatorname{Cay}(G)$ with interval $[0,1]$ and chooses the maximal metric $d$ which agrees with metric on every edge. Define a label function on paths in $\operatorname{Cay}(G)$. From now on, by a path in $\operatorname{Cay}(G)$ we mean a path $p=p_{1} \ldots p_{n}$, where $p_{i}$ is an edge in $\operatorname{Cay}(G)$ between some group elements $g_{i}, g_{i+1}$ for every $1 \leq i \leq n$. A label $\operatorname{lab}(p)$ function is defined on any path $p$ by equality $\operatorname{lab}(p)=\operatorname{lab}\left(p_{1}\right) \ldots \operatorname{lab}\left(p_{n}\right)$, i.e. $\operatorname{lab}(p)$ is a word in alphabet $S^{ \pm 1}$.

Hence a unique word $\operatorname{lab}(p)$ is assigned to a path $p$ in $\operatorname{Cay}(G)$. On the other hand for every word $w$ in alphabet $S^{ \pm 1}$ there exists a unique path $p$ in $\operatorname{Cay}(G)$ starting from the identity vertex with label $w$. Hence there is a one-to-one correspondence between paths with initial vertex $e$ (the identity vertex in $G$ ) and words in alphabet $S^{ \pm 1}$, so we will not distinguish between a word in the alphabet $S^{ \pm 1}$ and it's image in $\operatorname{Cay}(G)$, i.e. a path starting from the identity vertex. Thus, when considering some words $X, Y, Z$ in the alphabet $S^{ \pm 1}$, we can talk about the path $\gamma=X Y Z$ in the Cayley graph of $G$ originating in the identity vertex $e$. To distinguish a path $Y$ with initial vertex $e$ from the subpath of $\gamma$ with label $Y$ we denote the latter as $\gamma$. We will talk about values $|X|,\|X\|$ for a word $X$ in alphabet $S^{ \pm 1}$ meaning these values on the corresponding paths in $\operatorname{Cay}(G)$. Given elements $x_{1}, \ldots, x_{k}$ in $G$ we may write $\operatorname{lab}(p)=x_{1}^{t_{1}} \ldots x_{k}^{t_{k}}$ for some path $p$ in $\operatorname{Cay}(G), t_{i} \in \mathbb{Z}$ if for some geodesic words $X_{1}, \ldots, X_{k}$ representing elements $x_{1}, \ldots, x_{k}$ we have $\operatorname{lab}(p)=X_{1}^{t_{1}} \ldots X_{k}^{t_{k}}$.

For a point $x$ in a metric space $X$ and $r \geq 0$ we denote by $B_{r}(x)$ a metric ball of radius $r$ around $x$. For a set $D \subset X$ we denote by $B_{r}(D)$ a (closed) $r$-neighborhood of $D$ in $X$ (i.e. $B_{r}(D)=\cup_{x \in D} B_{r}(x)$ ). We denote the ball $B_{R}(e)$ in the Cayley graph $\operatorname{Cay}(G)$ by $B_{R}$. Given a set $D \in \operatorname{Cay}(G)$ we denote by $\#\{D\}$ a number of vertices in $D$.

A group $G$ is called $\delta$-hyperbolic for some $\delta \geq 0$, if it's Cayley graph is $\delta$-hyperbolic. It is well known that hyperbolicity does not depend on choice of a finite presentation of the group $G$ (while $\delta$ does depend on presentation).

We recall that a (sub)group is called elementary if it contains a cyclic group of finite index. For any
element $g \in G$ of infinite order in a hyperbolic group, there exists a unique maximal elementary subgroup $E(g)$ containing $g$ (see [Gro], [Olsh93] Lemma 1.16). It is well known that for a hyperbolic group $G$

$$
E(g)=\left\{x \in G \mid \exists n \neq 0 \text { such that } x g^{n} x^{-1}=g^{ \pm n} \text { in } G\right\}
$$

and if $a$ is an element in $E(g)$ of infinite order then $E(g)=E(a)$. We recall also that if $G$ is a non-elementary hyperbolic then the subgroup $E(G)=\cap_{g}\{E(g) \mid g \in G$, order of $g$ is infinite $\}$ is a unique maximal finite normal subgroup ([Olsh93], Prop.1). As agreed in the introduction, we will call $E(G)$ the finite radical of a non-elementary group $G$.

Definition II.2.1. A subset $A$ is called $K$-quasiconvex in the metric space $X$ if for any pair of points $a, b \in A$ every geodesic connecting $a$ and $b$ (in $X$ ) is within (closed) $K$-neighborhood of $A$. A subgroup $\mathscr{H}$ of a hyperbolic group $G$ is $K$-quasiconvex if it forms a $K$-quasiconvex subset in the graph $C a y(G)$.

It is said that $\mathscr{H}$ is quasiconvex if it is $K$-quasiconvex for some $K \geq 0$. Note also that the left multiplication $g \rightarrow a g$ induces an isometry of $G$ and hence, for a $K$-quasiconvex subgroup $\mathscr{H}$, the right coset $a \mathscr{H}$ is $K$-quasiconvex for any $a$ in $G$.

Lemma II.2.2. ([GMRS], Lemma 1.2) Let H be a K-quasiconvex subgroup of a $\delta$-hyperbolic group $G$. If the shortest representative of a double coset $H g H$ has length greater than $2 K+2 \delta$, then the intersection $H \cap g^{-1} H g$ consists of elements shorter than $2 K+8 \delta+2$ and, hence, is finite.

Proposition II.2.3. ([Arzh], Prop.1) Let G be a word hyperbolic group and H a quasiconvex subgroup of $G$ of infinite index. Then the number of double cosets of $G$ modulo $H$ is infinite.

Another important property that we are going to use is:
Lemma II.2.4. ([Min] Lemma 3.8) Assume $H, K$ are subgroups of a $\delta$-hyperbolic group $G, H$ is quasiconvex, $K$ is non-elementary and $\left|K:\left(K \cap H^{g}\right)\right|=\infty$ for every $g \in G$. Then there exists an element $y \in K$ such that $E(y)=E(K) \times\langle y\rangle$ and $\langle y\rangle^{G} \cap H=e$, where $\langle y\rangle^{G}$ is the set of conjugates of all elements of $\langle y\rangle$ and $E(K)$ is a unique maximal finite subgroup normalized by $K$.

We quote the following:
Theorem II.2.5. ([Mack], Theorem 6.4) Let G be a hyperbolic group and He a quasiconvex subgroup of infinite index in $G$. Then there exist $C>0$ and a set-theoretic section $s: G / H \rightarrow G$ such that:
(i) the section $s$ maps each coset $g H$ to an element $g^{\prime} \in g H$ with $\left|g^{\prime}\right|$ minimal among all representatives in $g H$;
(ii) the group $G$ is within $C$-neighborhood of $s(G / H)$.

The following Lemma summarize some properties of elementary subgroups of hyperbolic groups ([Gro]; [Ghys] p.150, p.154; [CDP] Pr. 4.2, Ch.10; [Olsh93] Lemma 2.2).

Lemma II.2.6. Let $G$ be a hyperbolic group.
(i) For any word $W$ of infinite order in the hyperbolic group $G$ there exist constants $0<\lambda \leq 1$ and $c \geq 0$ such that any path with label $W^{m}$ in $\operatorname{Cay}(G)$ is $(\lambda, c)$-quasigeodesic for any $m$.
(ii) Let $E$ be an infinite elementary subgroup in $G$. Then there exists a constant $K=K(E) \geq 0$ such that the subgroup $E$ is $K$-quasiconvex.
(iii) If $W$ is a geodesic word and $p$ is a path with label $W^{n}$ then there exists $K$ (independent of $n$ ) such that the path $p$ and the geodesic $\left[p_{-}, p_{+}\right]$are within $K$-neighborhoods of each other.
(iv) Let $g$, $h$ be elements of infinite order such that $E(g) \neq E(h)$. Then the Gromov products $\left(g^{m}, h^{n}\right)$, $\left(g^{u}, g^{v}\right),\left(h^{u}, h^{v}\right)$ are bounded by some constant $C$ depending on $g, h$ only provided $u v<0$.

Following [Olsh93], we call a pair of elements $x, y$ of infinite order in $G$ non-commensurable if $x^{k}$ is not conjugate to $y^{s}$ for any non-zero integers $k, s$.

Lemma II.2.7. ([Olsh93], Lemmas 3.4, 3.8) There exist infinitely many pairwise non-commensurable elements $g_{1}, g_{2}, \ldots$ in a non-elementary hyperbolic group $G$ such that $E\left(g_{i}\right)=\left\langle g_{i}\right\rangle \times E(G)$ for every $i$.

We will say (adopting the terminology from [Min2006]) that the element $g \in G$ is $G$-suitable if $E(g)=$ $E(G) \times<g>$.

Let $W$ be a word, and let us fix some factorization $W \equiv W_{1}^{i_{1}} W_{2}^{i_{2}} \ldots W_{k}^{i_{k}}$ for some words $W_{1}, \ldots, W_{k}$. Consider a path $q$ with label $W$ in $\operatorname{Cay}(G)$.

Consider all vertices $o_{i}$ which are the terminal vertices of initial subpaths $p_{i}$ of $q$ such that $\operatorname{lab}\left(p_{i}\right)=$ $W_{1}^{i_{1}} \ldots W_{m-1}^{i_{m-1}} W_{m}^{s}$, where $m \leq k$ and $s=0, \ldots, i_{m}$. Following [Olsh93], we call vertices $\left\{o_{i}\right\}$ phase vertices of $q$ relative to factorization $W_{1}^{i_{1}} W_{2}^{i_{2}} \ldots W_{k}^{i_{k}}$ of the $\operatorname{lab}(q)$. We enumerate distinct phase vertices along the path $q$ starting from $o_{0}=q_{-}$; the total number of such vertices is $\left(\left|i_{1}\right|+\ldots+\left|i_{k}\right|+1\right)$.

Assume we have a pair of paths $q, \bar{q}$ in $\operatorname{Cay}(G)$ with phase vertices $o_{i}$ and $\bar{o}_{j}$ where $i=1, \ldots, l, j=1, \ldots, m$ for some positive integers $l, m$. We call a shortest path between a phase vertex $o_{i}$ and some phase vertex $\bar{o}_{j}$ of $\bar{q}$ a phase path with initial vertex $o_{i}$. We may also talk about phase vertices of subpaths $p$ of $q$ meaning these vertices $o_{i}$ which belong to $p$.

Definition II.2.8. [Olsh93] Let the words $W_{1}, \ldots, W_{l}$ represent some elements of infinite order in $G$. Fix some $A \geq 0$ and an integer $m$ to define a set $S_{m}=S\left(W_{1}, \ldots, W_{l}, A, m\right)$ of words

$$
W=X_{0} W_{1}^{m_{1}} X_{1} W_{2}^{m_{2}} \ldots W_{l}^{m_{l}} X_{l} \text { where }\left|m_{2}\right|, \ldots,\left|m_{l-1}\right| \geq m
$$

such that $\left\|X_{i}\right\| \leq A$ for $i=0, \ldots, l$ and $X_{i}^{-1} W_{i} X_{i} \notin E\left(W_{i+1}\right)$ in $G$ for $i=1, \ldots, l-1$. If $l=1$ we assume that $\left|m_{1}\right| \geq m$.

Lemma II.2.9. ([Olsh93], Lemma 2.4) There exist $\lambda>0, c \geq 0$ and $m>0$ (depending on $K, W_{1}, W_{2}, \ldots, W_{l}$ ) such that any word $W \in S_{m}$ is $(\lambda, c)$-quasigeodesic. If $W_{i} \equiv W_{j}$ for all $i, j$ then the constant $\lambda$ does not depend on $A, l$.

Consider a closed path $p_{1} q_{1} p_{2} q_{2}$ in $\operatorname{Cay}(G)$. Let $q_{1}=x_{1} t_{1} x_{2} t_{2} \ldots x_{l} t_{l}$ where $\operatorname{lab}\left(x_{i}\right)=X_{i}$ and $\operatorname{lab}\left(t_{i}\right)=$ $W_{i}^{m_{i}}$ for some $W=X_{0} W_{1}^{m_{1}} X_{1} W_{2}^{m_{2}} \ldots W_{l}^{m_{l}} X_{l} \in S_{m}$. Similarly, we let $q_{2}^{-1}=\bar{x}_{1} \bar{t}_{1} \ldots \bar{x}_{l} \bar{t}_{l}$ where $\operatorname{lab}\left(\bar{x}_{i}\right)=\bar{X}_{i}$ and $\operatorname{lab}\left(\bar{t}_{i}\right)=\bar{W}_{i}^{\bar{m}_{i}}$ for some $\bar{W}=\bar{X}_{0} \bar{W}_{1}^{\bar{m}_{1}} \bar{X}_{1} \bar{W}_{2}^{\bar{m}_{2}} \ldots \bar{W}_{l}^{\bar{m}_{l}} \bar{X}_{l} \in \bar{S}_{m}$. Define phase vertices $o_{i}$ and $\bar{o}_{j}$ on $q_{1}$ and $q_{2}$
relative to factorizations $X_{0} W_{1}^{m_{1}} X_{1} W_{2}^{m_{2}} \ldots W_{l}^{m_{l}} X_{l}$ and $\bar{X}_{0} \bar{W}_{1}^{\bar{m}_{1}} \bar{X}_{1} \bar{W}_{2}^{\bar{m}_{2}} \ldots \bar{W}_{l}^{\bar{m}_{l}} \bar{X}_{l}$. As in [Olsh93], We say that paths $t_{i}$ and $\bar{t}_{j}$ are compatible if there exists a phase path $v_{i}$ with $\operatorname{lab}\left(v_{i}\right)=V_{i}$ between a phase vertex of $t_{i}$ and $\bar{t}_{j}$ such that there exist natural numbers $a, b$ satisfying $\left(V_{i} \bar{W}_{j} V_{i}^{-1}\right)^{a}=W_{i}^{b}$.

Lemma II.2.10. ([Olsh93], Lemma 2.5) Provided the conditions for $q_{1}$ and $q_{2}$ hold, and $\left|p_{1}\right|,\left|p_{2}\right|<C$ for some $C$, there exists an integer $m$ and an integer $k$, where $|k| \leq 1$ such that $t_{i}$ and $\bar{t}_{i+k}$ are compatible for any $i=2, \ldots, l-1$ provided that $\left|m_{2}\right|, \ldots,\left|m_{l-1}\right|,\left|\bar{m}_{2}\right|, \ldots,\left|\bar{m}_{l-1}\right| \geq m$ and for $i=1($ resp. $i=l)$ if $\left|m_{1}\right| \geq m$, (resp. $\left|m_{l}\right| \geq m$ ). Moreover $t_{i}$ is not compatible with $\bar{t}_{j}$ if $j \neq i+k$.

## CHAPTER III

## ON THE GENERATORS OF THE KERNELS OF HYPERBOLIC GROUP PRESENTATIONS

## III. 1 T. Delzant's small cancellation

In this section we recall some definitions and Lemmas from [Delz], but with certain modifications. We would like to formulate all the statements in the language of (geodesic) and cyclically reduced words rather then group elements and cyclically reduced group elements (element $g$ of the group $G$ is called a cyclically reduced element if $g$ has a minimal length in it's conjugacy class in $G$ ). The proofs of these Lemmas can be repeated while changing the terminology.

We first recall the following Lemmas:
Lemma III.1.1. ([Delz], Lemma 1.2.1) Let $V, W$ be geodesic words in $G$; their scalar product is an integer or $\frac{1}{2}$ times integer. If $V \equiv A B$ such that $|A|=\left[\langle V, W\rangle_{1}\right]$ and $C$ is defined by equality $A C=W$ in $G$ then the path $A C$ is geodesic up to constant $2 \delta$ (we denote by $[x]$ a maximal integer smaller or equal to $x$ ).

Lemma III.1.2. ([Delz] Lemma 1.5.1) Let $V$ be a geodesic word in $G$ which is shortest in it's conjugacy class and of length no less than $20 \delta$. Assume that $W$ is conjugate to $V$. Then there exists a geodesic word $U$ and a cyclic conjugate $V^{\prime}$ of $V$ such that $W=U V^{\prime} U^{-1}$ and the path $U V^{\prime} U^{-1}$ is geodesic up to $10 \delta$.

Let us mention the following property of metric trees with finite number of vertices. If a metric tree $T$ is a union of $n$ segments $\cup_{i=1}^{n}\left[l_{0}, l_{i}\right]$ originating from a fixed vertex $w_{0}$, it is easy to see that an addition of a new segment $\left[l_{0}, l_{n+1}\right]$ to $T$ can increase the number of edges by at most 2 . To be more precise we can prove by induction on $n$ that $|E(T)| \leq 2 n-1$, where $E(T)$ is a set of edges in $T$.

The Proposition below provides a "pull-back" of the tree approximation $T$ for the set $F$ in the situation of Theorem II.1.4 in the original hyperbolic space $X$. It will be formulated for hyperbolic groups. In order to formulate this Proposition we need to add some edges of zero length to $E(T)$. The reason for this adjustment is that a trivial edge in $T$ may correspond to a nontrivial group word ("edge in the pullback tree") in the Proposition III.1.3. For every $k \leq n$ we consider a subtree $T_{k}=\Phi\left(\cup_{s=1}^{k}\left[w_{0}, w_{s}\right]\right)$. For every $i \leq n$, if $\Phi\left(w_{i}\right) \in$ $T_{i-1}$, then we add to the set of edges $E(T)$ a new edge of zero length $\left[\Phi\left(w_{i}\right), \Phi\left(w_{i}\right)\right]$. The inequality $|E(T)| \leq$ $2 n-1$ still holds if we take into account edges of zero length. We choose an (arbitrary) orientation on every edge $\alpha \in E(T)$. When we consider a segment $\left[\Phi\left(w_{i}\right), \Phi\left(w_{j}\right)\right]=\alpha_{s_{1}}^{\varepsilon_{1}} \ldots \alpha_{s_{m}}^{\varepsilon_{m}}\left(\alpha_{s_{i}} \in E(T)\right)$ in Proposition III.1.3 such that a zero length edge was defined for $i$ (for $j$ ), we assume that $\alpha_{S_{1}}$ is the edge $\left[\Phi\left(w_{i}\right), \Phi\left(w_{i}\right)\right]$ (respectively, $\alpha_{s_{m}}$ is the edge $\left[\Phi\left(w_{j}\right), \Phi\left(w_{j}\right)\right]$ ). After described conventions, we may formulate the following:

Proposition III.1.3. ([Delz] Lemma 1.3.2) Let $g_{0}, g_{1}, \ldots, g_{n}$ be elements in $G, n \leq 2^{k}$ and let $\Phi, T$ be the corresponding approximation tree and function provided by Theorem II.1.4. Denote by $E(T)=\left\{\alpha_{1}, \ldots, \alpha_{2 n-1}\right\}$ the set of edges of $T$. Let $W$ be a geodesic word such that $W=g_{0}^{-1} g_{1}$ in $G$. Then there exist geodesic words $A_{1}, \ldots, A_{2 n-1}$ in $G$ satisfying the following properties:
(i) $\left|\left|\alpha_{i}\right|-\left|A_{i}\right|\right| \leq 2 \delta(k+1)+2$.
(ii) If the geodesic $\left[\Phi\left(g_{i}\right), \Phi\left(g_{j}\right)\right]$ is a path $\alpha_{s_{1}}^{\varepsilon_{1}} \ldots \alpha_{s_{m}}^{\varepsilon_{m}}$ in the tree $T$, then $g_{i}^{-1} g_{j}=A_{s_{1}}^{\varepsilon_{1}} \ldots A_{s_{m}}^{\varepsilon_{m}}$ in $G$, $\varepsilon_{i}= \pm 1$ and $A_{s_{1}}^{\varepsilon_{1}} \ldots A_{s_{m}}^{\varepsilon_{m}}$ is geodesic up to $n(2 \delta(k+1)+2)$.
(iii) The word $A_{s_{1}}^{\varepsilon_{1}} \ldots A_{s_{m}}^{\varepsilon_{m}}$ defined in (ii) for $g_{0}^{-1} g_{1}$ is geodesic and $W \equiv A_{s_{1}}^{\varepsilon_{1}} \ldots A_{s_{m}}^{\varepsilon_{m}}$.

## Small Cancellation Properties on the Cayley Graph of Hyperbolic Groups

The following definitions can be found in [LSch]. We call the set of words $\mathscr{R}$ symmetrized if it is a set of freely cyclically reduced words in alphabet $S^{ \pm 1}$, i.e.
(i) $R \in \mathscr{R} \Longrightarrow R^{-1} \in \mathscr{R}$,
(ii) $R \in \mathscr{R}, R \equiv R_{1} R_{2} \Longrightarrow R_{2} R_{1} \in \mathscr{R}$.

We will sometimes talk about cyclic word $R$ meaning $R$ or one of it's cyclic conjugates. Denote by $G_{1}$ the factor group $G / \mathscr{N}(\mathscr{R})$ of $G$ by the normal closure (in $G$ ) of the set $\mathscr{R}$. For a pair of words $X, Y$ in the alphabet $S^{ \pm 1}$ let us denote by $X \equiv Y$ a letter-by-letter equality of $X$ and $Y$.

Definition III.1.4. Let $\mathscr{R}$ be a symmetrized set of geodesic words in the $\delta$-hyperbolic group $G$ and $\mu<1 / 8$. Assume furthermore that every $R \in \mathscr{R}$ is a cyclically reduced element of $G$. The family $\mathscr{R}$ satisfies a small cancellation condition $C^{\prime}(\mu)$ if:
(i) For every words $A, B$ in $G,|A|,|B| \leq 100 \delta, \forall R_{1}, R_{2} \in \mathscr{R}$, if $\left\langle A R_{1} B, R_{2}\right\rangle>\mu \min \left(\left|R_{1}\right|,\left|R_{2}\right|\right)$, then $R_{2}=A R_{1} A^{-1}$ in $G$;
(ii) $\min _{R \in \mathscr{R}}(|R|) \geq 5000 \delta /(1-8 \mu)$.

The previous definition is essentially the same as that in [Delz], 2.1 up to some adjustment of constants (the difference between them is that $b=1 \mathrm{in}[$ Delz] ).

Definition III.1.5. [Delz] We say that a geodesic word $U$ of $G$ contains more then half of a relation if there exists $R \equiv r_{1} r_{2}$ from $\mathscr{R}$ such that
(i) $R \equiv r_{1} r_{2}$ is geodesic, $\left|r_{1}\right| \geq\left|r_{2}\right|+60 \delta$ and
(ii) $U$ equals to the word $U_{1} r_{1} U_{2}$ in $G$, which is geodesic up to $50 \delta$.

We denote the set of all geodesic words $U$ which do not contain more then half of a relation by $\mathscr{U}$.
Lemma III.1.6. ([Delz], Lemma 2.2) Consider the set $\mathscr{X}$ of words $U R U^{-1}$ geodesic up to $10 \delta$ in $G$ such that $U$ does not contain more then half of a relation from $\mathscr{R}$. Then every element $g$ in the normal closure $\mathscr{N}(\mathscr{R})$ is a product of words from $\mathscr{X}$.

The proof of the Lemma III.1.6 follows immediately from the remark below.
Remark III.1.7. (i) Suppose that a geodesic word $U$ contains more then half of a relation (i.e. $U=U_{1} r_{1} U_{2}$ for some geodesic words $U_{1}, U_{2}, r_{1}$ satisfying Definition III.1.5). Then
$U R U^{-1}=\left(U_{1} r_{1} r_{2} U_{1}^{-1}\right)\left[\left(U_{1} r_{2}^{-1} U_{2}\right) R\left(U_{1} r_{2}^{-1} U_{2}\right)^{-1}\right]\left(U_{1} r_{1} r_{2} U_{1}^{-1}\right)^{-1}$ in $G$ and, evidently,
$\left|U_{1} r_{2}^{-1} U_{2}^{-1}\right|,\left|U_{1}\right|<|U|$.
(ii) Suppose that $R \in \mathscr{R}$, and $U R U^{-1}$ is not geodesic up to $10 \delta$. Then by Lemma III.1.2 there exists $R^{\prime} \in \mathscr{R}$ (so $|R|=\left|R^{\prime}\right|$ ) and a geodesic word $V$ such that $U R U^{-1}=V R^{\prime} V^{-1}$ in $G$ and $V R^{\prime} V^{-1}$ is geodesic up to $10 \delta$.

Figure III.1: Cancellation Tree


We introduce some notation and conventions. Let $g$ be an element in the normal closure of $\mathscr{R}$, choose $n$ minimal such that

$$
g=U_{1} R_{1} U_{1}^{-1} \ldots U_{n} R_{n} U_{n}^{-1} \text { with } U_{i} R_{i} U_{i}^{-1} \in \mathscr{X}
$$

Then we denote: $g_{0}=1, g_{1}=U_{1} R_{1} U_{1}^{-1}, \ldots, g_{n}=g$. Also we set $a_{i}=g_{i-1} U_{i}$ and $b_{i}=a_{i} R_{i}=g_{i} U_{i}$.
Assume that for some indices $i<j$ the approximation tree $T$ for vertices $a_{i}, b_{i}, a_{j}, b_{j}$ is of shape on the Figure III. 1 ( $T$ is provided by Gromov's Theorem II.1.4 where $w=a_{i}, k=2, n=3$ ). For convenience we label vertices of the tree on Figure III. 1 by corresponding group elements. Proposition III.1.3 provides us with with five geodesic words $X, Y, Z, U, V$ such that $R_{i}=X Y Z$, where $X Y Z$ is geodesic and $R_{j}=U^{-1} Y^{-1} V$, where $U^{-1} Y^{-1} V$ is geodesic up to $3(2 \cdot 3 \delta+2)=18 \delta+6$. We label edges of the tree $T$ with $X, Y, Z, U, V$ for convenience of the reader. Note that $\Phi$ and $T$ determine the exponents of $X, Y, Z, U, V$ in equalities for $R_{i}, R_{j}$ uniquely.

The following Lemma is an application of the small cancellation, we provide a proof of it (following [Delz]) for future references.

Lemma III.1.8. ([Delz], Lemma 2.3) Suppose that a fixed element $g$ is equal to a word $W=U_{1} R_{1} U_{1}^{-1} \ldots U_{n} R_{n} U_{n}^{-1}$ in $G$ and that for some indices $i<j$ the tree approximation of vertices $a_{i}, b_{i}, a_{j}, b_{j}$ in Cay $(G)$ (with geodesic words $X, Y, Z, U, V$ provided by Proposition III.1.3) has the shape on Figure III.1.
(i) Assume that $n$ is a minimal possible number among all words $W$ equal to $g$. Then the following inequality holds:

$$
\begin{equation*}
|Y| \leq \mu \min \left(\left|R_{i}\right| ;\left|R_{j}\right|\right)+10 \delta+3 \tag{III.1}
\end{equation*}
$$

(ii) If the equality (III.1) is violated then $n$ is not minimal and the following equality holds in $G$ :

$$
\begin{equation*}
U_{i+1} R_{i+1} U_{i+1}^{-1} \ldots U_{j-1} R_{j-1} U_{j-1}^{-1}=U_{i} R_{i} U_{i}^{-1} \ldots U_{j} R_{j} U_{j}^{-1} \tag{III.2}
\end{equation*}
$$

Proof Assume that the inequality (III.1) does not hold. In notations used in Figure III. 1 we have $R_{i}=$ $X Y Z$ and $X Y Z$ is geodesic, $R_{j}=U^{-1} Y^{-1} V$, where the right-hand side is geodesic up to $3(2 \cdot 3 \delta+2)=$ $18 \delta+6$. We consider the conjugate $R_{i}^{\prime}=Y Z X$ of $R_{i}$, which is also geodesic: $\left|R_{i}^{\prime}\right| \geq\left|R_{i}\right|$ (since $R_{i}$ is a cyclically reduced geodesic word), but on the other hand $\left|R_{i}^{\prime}\right| \leq|Y|+|Z|+|X|=\left|R_{i}\right|$. Consider also the conjugate $R_{j}^{\prime}=Y U V^{-1}$ of $R_{j}^{-1}$ which is geodesic up to $3(2 \cdot 3 \delta+2)=18 \delta+6$ (we have $\left|R_{j}\right| \leq\left|R_{j}^{\prime}\right| \leq$ $\left.|Y|+|U|+|V| \leq\left|R_{j}\right|+18 \delta+6\right)$.

By Lemma III.1.2, there exists a geodesic word $R^{\prime \prime}=A R_{j}^{\prime} A^{-1}$ cyclically conjugate to $R_{j}$ such that $2|A|+\left|R^{\prime \prime}\right| \leq\left|R_{j}^{\prime}\right|+10 \delta$ and $\left|R^{\prime \prime}\right|=\left|R_{j}\right|$. Now the computation

$$
2|A|+\left|R^{\prime \prime}\right| \leq\left|R_{j}^{\prime}\right|+10 \delta \leq\left|R_{j}\right|+28 \delta+6
$$

implies that $|A| \leq 14 \delta+3$. We also have that $R^{\prime \prime} \in \mathscr{R}$ : it is a cyclic conjugate of $R_{j}$.
By definition of hyperbolicity, we have that

$$
\left(R_{i}^{\prime}, R_{j}^{\prime}\right) \geq \min \left(\left(Y, R_{j}^{\prime}\right),\left(R_{i}^{\prime}, Y\right)\right)-\delta .
$$

Both Gromov products on the right side of the last equation are not greater than $|Y|$ and the second is actually equal to $|Y|$ because $R_{i}^{\prime}=Y Z X$ is geodesic. So $\left(R_{i}^{\prime}, R_{j}^{\prime}\right) \geq\left(Y, R_{j}^{\prime}\right)-\delta=|Y|-\delta-\left(1, R_{j}^{\prime}\right)_{Y}$, where the last equality follows from $\left(Y, R_{j}^{\prime}\right)_{1}+\left(1, R_{j}^{\prime}\right)_{Y}=|Y|$. Since $R_{j}^{\prime}=Y U V^{-1}$ is geodesic up to $18 \delta+6$ we have by inequality (II.2) that $\left\langle 1, R_{j}^{\prime}\right\rangle_{Y} \leq 9 \delta+3$ and finally

$$
\left(R_{i}^{\prime}, R_{j}^{\prime}\right) \geq|Y|-10 \delta-3
$$

We hence obtained that $\left(A R^{\prime \prime} A^{-1}, R_{i}^{\prime}\right) \geq \mu \min \left(\left|R_{i}\right| ;\left|R_{j}\right|\right)$ and by the condition $C^{\prime}(\mu)$ we get that $A^{-1} R^{\prime \prime} A=$ $Y U V^{-1}=R_{i}^{\prime}=Y Z X$. Thus $U V^{-1}=Z X$, hence $Z^{-1} U=X V$ and so $b_{i}^{-1} a_{j}=a_{i}^{-1} b_{j}$, which in turn is equivalent to $U_{i}^{-1} g_{i}^{-1} g_{j-1} U_{j}=U_{i}^{-1} g_{j-1}^{-1} g_{j} U_{j}$ and hence $g_{i}^{-1} g_{j-1}=g_{i-1}^{-1} g_{j}$. Rewriting the last equality in the explicit form, we get precisely equation (III.2).

The left-hand side of the last equality contains fewer elements of $\mathscr{X}$ contrary to the minimality of number $n$ for $g$. Contradiction.

The following definition utilizes the Lemma
Definition III.1.9. [Delz] A word (or, equivalently, a path in $\operatorname{Cay}(G)) U_{1} R_{1} U_{1}^{-1} \ldots U_{n} R_{n} U_{n}^{-1}$ is called reduced if for every pair of indices $i<j$ such that the approximating tree for $a_{i}, b_{i}, a_{j}, b_{j}$ is of shape on Figure III.1, the inequality (III.1) holds. If for a pair of indexes $i<j$ the tree approximation is of shape on Figure III.1, the inequality (III.1) is violated, then we call $i<j$ a reducible pair of indexes.

Note that if we switch the labels $a_{j}$ and $b_{j}$ on Figure III.1, the pair $i<j$ will no longer be a reducible pair. The following corollary summarizes [Delz] Lemma 2.4.

Lemma III.1.10. Suppose $G$ is hyperbolic and $\mathscr{R}$ satisfies $C^{\prime}(\mu), \mu \leq 1 / 8$. Let $\gamma=\prod_{i=1}^{n} U_{i} R_{i} U_{i}^{-1}$ be a reduced path in $\operatorname{Cay}(G), U_{i} R_{i} U_{i}^{-1} \in \mathscr{X}$ and denote by $\bar{\gamma}$ some geodesic between $\gamma_{-}, \gamma_{+}$. Then there exist an index $1 \leq i_{0} \leq n$, a subsegment $x$ of geodesic segment $\gamma R_{i_{0}}$ such that $x$ is in $30 \delta$-neighborhood of $\bar{\gamma}$ and $|x| \geq(1-3 \mu)\left|R_{i_{0}}\right|-1500 \delta$.

## III. 2 Diagrams and small cancellation

Suppose we are given a hyperbolic group $G$ with a combinatorial presentation $G=g p(S \mid \mathscr{D})$. For technical purposes we assume that $\mathscr{D}$ contains all relations of the group $G$.

For $\varepsilon \geq 0$ a subword $U$ is called an $\varepsilon$-piece of a word $R$ in a symmetrized set $\mathscr{R}$ with respect to $G$ if there exists a word $R^{\prime} \in \mathscr{R}$ such that
(i) $R \equiv U V, R^{\prime} \equiv U^{\prime} V^{\prime}$ for some $U^{\prime}, V^{\prime}, V$;
(ii) $U^{\prime}=Y U Z$ in $G$ for some words $Y, Z$ where $\|Y\|,\|Z\| \leq \varepsilon$;
(iii) $Y R Y^{-1} \neq R^{\prime}$ in the group $G$.

We say that the system $\mathscr{R}$ satisfies the $C(\varepsilon, \mu, \rho)$-condition (with respect to $G$ ) for some $\varepsilon \geq 0, \mu \geq$ $0, \rho \geq 0$ if
(i) $\|R\| \geq \rho$ for any $R \in \mathscr{R}$;
(ii) any word $R \in \mathscr{R}$ is geodesic;
(iii) for any $\varepsilon$-piece of any word $R \in \mathscr{R}$ the inequalities $\|U\|,\left\|U^{\prime}\right\|<\mu\|R\|$ hold (using notations of the definition of the $\varepsilon$-piece).

Definition III.2.1. Consider a finite, two dimensional complex $\Delta$ with directed edges such that:
(i) The underlying topological space of complex $M$ is a disc with a boundary $P$.
(ii) For any path in $\Delta$ there defined a label function $\phi(*)$. If $x$ is an edge in $\Delta$, $\phi(x) \in S \cup S^{-1} \cup 1$ and $\phi\left(x^{-1}\right)=\phi(x)^{-1}$. For a path $q$ in $\Delta, q=q_{1} \ldots q_{n}$, where $q_{i}$ is an edge for every $i$, we define $\phi(q)=$ $\phi\left(q_{1}\right) \ldots \phi\left(q_{n}\right)$. If $q$ is a simple closed path we choose a base vertex $o$ and read off the labels of edges in the clockwise direction.
(iii) A boundary label of any 2 -cell of $M$ is either an element of $\mathscr{R}$ (then we call it an $\mathscr{R}$-face) or has a label $D$ where $D=1$ in the hyperbolic group $G$ ( $\mathscr{D}$-face).

We call the triple $(M, \phi(*), P) a$ (disc) diagram $\Delta$ with respect to $g p(S \mid \mathscr{D} \cup \mathscr{R})$ with a boundary path $P$.

## Similarly we may define notions of annular or spherical diagrams.

For convenience we often fix a base point $o$ of the diagram $\Delta$ - a vertex on one of the boundary components of $\Delta$. We may also choose a base point $o_{1}$ on the boundary of a face $\Pi$ and write $\partial_{o_{1}} \Pi=r$ where $r$ is a simple closed boundary path of $\Pi$ with a initial (terminal) vertex $o_{1}$.

Consider a path $\gamma$ in $\Delta$ as a path in the underlying topological space $M$. We say that $\gamma$ is a simple path in $\Delta$ if for every open set $U$ in $M$ containing $\gamma$ there exists a homotopy (in $U$ ) from $\gamma$ to a simple curve $\gamma^{\prime}=\gamma^{\prime}(U)$. A simple closed path $\gamma$ in $\Delta$ bounds a subdiagram $\Delta_{1}$ with boundary $\partial \Delta_{1}=\gamma$ consisting of all edges, vertices and faces which are inside the simple closed curve $\gamma^{\prime}=\gamma^{\prime}(U)$ for every open set $U$ containing $\gamma$. Subdiagrams $\Delta_{1}, \Delta_{2}$ are called disjoint if for every neighborhood of $\partial \Delta_{1} \cup \partial \Delta_{2}$ (in the underlying space for $\Delta$ ) there exists a homotopy inside $U$ of $\partial \Delta_{1}$ to a simple $\gamma_{1}$ such that $\Delta_{2} \cap \gamma_{1}=\emptyset$.

The following operations (and their inverses) are referred to as elementary transformations of diagram $\Delta$ over $G_{1}$ :

1. Let $\Pi_{1}, \Pi_{2}$ be $\mathscr{D}$-faces in $\Delta$ with a common boundary subpath $p$. Then we can erase p making $\Pi_{1}, \Pi_{2}$ into a single $\mathscr{D}$-face.
2. Let $p$ be a simple path in $\Delta$. Then we cut the diagram $\Delta$ along $p$ (i.e. consider the path $p p^{-1}$ as a new boundary component) and glue in a $\mathscr{D}$-face labeled by $\phi(p) \phi(p)^{-1}$.

It is clear that elementary transformations define an equivalence relation on the set of all reduced diagrams over $G_{1}$. We say that $\Delta$ is equivalent to $\Delta^{\prime}$ if there exists a finite sequence of elementary transformations starting from $\Delta$ and ending with $\Delta^{\prime}$.

Definition III.2.2. ([Olsh93]) Let $\Pi_{1}, \Pi_{2}$ be different $\mathscr{R}$-faces of a diagram $\Delta$ having boundary labels $R_{1}, R_{2}$ reading in a clockwise direction, starting from vertices $o_{1}, o_{2}$ respectively. Suppose also that there exists a simple path $t$ in $\Delta$ such that $t_{-}=o_{1}, t_{+}=o_{2}$. Call $\Pi_{1}, \Pi_{2}$ opposite (with respect to the path $t$ ) if the following equality holds:

$$
\begin{equation*}
\phi(t)^{-1} R_{1} \phi(t) R_{2}=1 \text { in } G \tag{III.3}
\end{equation*}
$$

If a diagram $\Delta$ contains no opposite faces then we call it reduced.
Lemma III.2.3. (van Kampen, see [Olsh93]) Let $w_{0}$ be an nonempty word in the alphabet $S$. Then $w_{0}=1$ in $G_{1}$ if and only if there exists a reduced disc diagram over $\operatorname{gp}(S \mid \mathscr{D} \cup \mathscr{R})$ with boundary label equal to $w_{0}$.

Let $p$ be a path in $\Delta$ over $G$, define $\|p\|=\|\phi(p)\|$ and $|p|=|\phi(p)|$. We call a path $p$ geodesic if $\|p\|=|p|$ (recall that $|p|$ equals the distance $\left|p_{+}-p_{-}\right|$in $G$ ).

One can define a map $\phi^{\prime}$ (see [Olsh93], §5) from a disc diagram $\Delta$ over $G$ with the base point $o$ to Caley $\operatorname{graph} \operatorname{Cay}(G)$. Set $\phi^{\prime}(o)=1$, where 1 is the identity vertex of $\operatorname{Cay}(G)$. For an arbitrary vertex $a$ in $\Delta$ we define $\phi^{\prime}(a)$ to be the vertex of $\operatorname{Cay}(G)$ labeled by the geodesic word $\phi(p)$ where $p$ is a path in $\Delta$ connecting $o$ and $a$ (it follows from the van Kampen Lemma that $\phi^{\prime}(a)$ does not depend on the choice of $p$ ). If $p$ is an edge in $\Delta$ labeled by $s \in S^{ \pm 1}$, then define $\phi^{\prime}(p)$ to be the edge labeled by $s$ in Cayley graph Cay $(G)$ with vertices $\phi^{\prime}\left(p_{-}\right), \phi^{\prime}\left(p_{+}\right)$. If $\phi(p) \equiv 1$ for an edge $p$ of $\Delta$ then $\phi^{\prime}(p)=\phi^{\prime}\left(p_{-}\right)=\phi^{\prime}\left(p_{+}\right)$. One can verify that $|p|=\left|\phi^{\prime}(p)\right|,\|p\|=\left\|\phi^{\prime}(p)\right\|$ for any path $p$ in diagram $\Delta$ over $G$ ([Olsh93], Lemma 5.1).

When $\Delta$ is a diagram over $G_{1}$ we still use functions $\|p\|,|p|$, where $p$ is a path in $\Delta$.
In the following remark we translate some hyperbolic properties of $\operatorname{Cay}(G)$ into the context of diagrams over $G$.

Remark III.2.4. (i) Suppose $\Delta$ is a reduced diagram over $G, p_{1}$ and $p_{2}$ are disjoint paths in $\Delta$, vertices $\left(p_{i}\right)_{ \pm}$ are on the boundary $\partial \Delta$. Then there exists a diagram $\Delta^{\prime}$ equivalent to $\Delta$, such that $\partial \Delta^{\prime}=\partial \Delta$, vertices $\left(p_{i}\right)_{ \pm}$ are connected by a geodesic path $p_{i}^{\prime}$ for $i=1,2$, and paths $p_{1}^{\prime}, p_{2}^{\prime}$ are disjoint. Furthermore, a point $x$ of the path $p_{i}^{\prime}$ is on $\partial \Delta^{\prime}$ if and only if it is an initial or terminal vertex of $p_{i}^{\prime}$.
(ii) Suppose $\Gamma$ is a diagram over $G, \partial \Gamma=p_{1} q_{1} p_{2} q_{2}$, where $q_{i}$ are geodesic in $G$ and $\left\|p_{i}\right\| \leq K,\left|q_{i}\right| \geq 2 K+$ $20 \delta$ for $i=1,2$ and some $K \geq 0$. Then (after elementary transformations) there exists a subdiagram $\Gamma^{\prime}$ in $\Gamma$ with boundary $\partial \Gamma^{\prime}=p_{1}^{\prime} q_{1}^{\prime} p_{2}^{\prime} q_{2}^{\prime}$ such that $\left\|p_{i}^{\prime}\right\| \leq 6 \delta, q_{i}^{\prime}$ are geodesic subpaths of $q_{i}$ and $\left|\left(q_{1}\right)_{+}-\left(q_{1}^{\prime}\right)_{+}\right|=$ $\left|\left(q_{1}\right)_{-}-\left(q_{1}^{\prime}\right)_{-}\right|=K+2 \delta$. In particular,

$$
\left|q_{1}^{\prime}\right|=\left|q_{1}\right|-2 K-4 \delta .
$$

(iii) If a subdiagram $\Gamma$ satisfies the conditions of part (ii), then every vertex $x$ of $q_{1}$ is at distance not greater than $K+8 \boldsymbol{\delta}$ from $q_{2}$ (i.e. there exists a vertex $y$ on $q_{2}$ such that $|x-y| \leq K+8 \boldsymbol{\delta}$ ).

Proof (i) Consider the map $\phi^{\prime}$ from diagram $\Delta$ to $\operatorname{Cay}(G)$. For $i=1,2$ we pick a geodesic in $\operatorname{Cay}(G)$ with label $P_{i}^{\prime}$ between vertices $\phi^{\prime}\left(p_{i \pm}\right)$ in $\operatorname{Cay}(G)$. We apply an elementary transformation of type (ii) to $p_{i}$ : cut $\Delta$ along $p_{i}$ to get a new boundary component $p_{i} \tilde{p}_{i}, \phi\left(\tilde{p}_{i}\right)=\phi\left(p_{i}\right)^{-1}$ in $G$ and glue inside a $\mathscr{D}$-face $\Pi_{i}$ with boundary $p_{i} \tilde{p}_{i}$. Then apply the inverse type (ii) to $\Pi_{i}$ : replace it with a pair of faces $\Pi_{i 1}, \Pi_{i 2}$ with common subpath $p_{i}^{\prime}$ labeled by $P_{i}^{\prime}\left(\partial \Pi_{i 1}=p_{i} p_{i}^{\prime-1}, \partial \Pi_{i 2}=p_{i}^{\prime} \tilde{p}_{i}\right)$. We have constructed the desired diagram
$\Delta^{\prime}$. It remains to notice that no vertex belongs to both closed paths $p_{1} \tilde{p}_{1}$ and $p_{2} \tilde{p}_{2}$ since $p_{i}, \tilde{p}_{i}$ are copies of disjoint paths $p_{i}$ in $\Delta$. Also, all vertices of $p_{i}^{\prime}$ except for $p_{i \pm}^{\prime}$ are interior in a subdiagram bounded by $p_{i} \tilde{p}_{i}$, and the remark is proved completely.
(ii) We consider $\phi^{\prime}(\Gamma)$, and apply Lemma II.1.1 to the pair of geodesic paths $\phi^{\prime}\left(q_{1}\right), \phi^{\prime}\left(q_{2}\right)$ in $\operatorname{Cay}(G)$ to find the subpath $q_{1}^{\prime \prime}$ of $\phi^{\prime}\left(q_{1}\right)$ such that $\left|\left(q_{1}^{\prime \prime}\right)_{ \pm}-\phi^{\prime}\left(\left(q_{1}^{\prime}\right)_{ \pm}\right)\right|=K+2 \delta$ and vertices $\left(q_{1}^{\prime}\right)_{ \pm}$are in $6 \delta$ neighborhood of geodesic $\phi^{\prime}\left(q_{2}\right)$. Define a subpath $q_{2}^{\prime \prime}$ of $\phi^{\prime}\left(q_{1}^{\prime}\right)$ so that the inequality $\left|\left(q_{1}^{\prime \prime}\right)_{ \pm}-\left(q_{2}^{\prime \prime}\right)_{ \pm}\right| \leq 6 \delta$ holds. It remains to choose a subpath $q_{i}^{\prime}$ on $q_{i}$ satisfying equality $\phi^{\prime}\left(q_{i}^{\prime}\right)=q_{i}^{\prime \prime}$. Now apply part (i) to two pairs of points $\left(q_{2}^{\prime}\right)_{+},\left(q_{1}^{\prime}\right)_{-}$and $\left(q_{1}^{\prime}\right)_{+},\left(q_{2}^{\prime}\right)_{-}$in $\Gamma$ which provides paths $p_{i}^{\prime}$ and observe that the path $p_{1}^{\prime} q_{1}^{\prime} p_{2}^{\prime} q_{2}^{\prime}$ bounds the desired diagram $\Gamma^{\prime}$.
(iii) Follows from remark II.1.3 and properties of the mapping $\phi^{\prime}$.

We will need the following:
Lemma III.2.5. Suppose we have a diagram $\Delta$ consisting of cells $\Pi_{1}, \Pi_{2}$, a simple path $t$ between them such that $\Pi_{1}, \Pi_{2}$ is pair of opposite cells with respect to a path $t$. Then, for any vertices o $o_{1}, o_{2}$ on $\partial \Pi_{1}, \partial \Pi_{2}$ respectively, there exists a path $s_{1} t s_{2}$ such that $\phi\left(s_{1} t s_{2}\right)=P \phi(a)$ in $G$, where $|a| \leq \frac{1}{2}\left|\partial \Pi_{2}\right|$, P is a geodesic word and $|P| \leq|t|+8 \delta, s_{i}$ is a subpath of $\partial \Pi_{i}(i=1,2)$, a is a subpath of $\partial \Pi_{2}$ and $s_{1-}=o_{1}, s_{2+}=o_{2}$. Moreover, the following equality holds in $G$ :

$$
\begin{equation*}
(P \phi(a))^{-1} \phi\left(\partial_{o_{1}} \Pi_{1}\right)(P \phi(a)) \phi\left(\partial_{o_{2}} \Pi_{2}\right)=1 \text { in } G . \tag{III.4}
\end{equation*}
$$

Proof. We denote $r_{1}$ to be the boundary path $\partial_{t-} \Pi_{1}, r_{2}$ to be the boundary path $\partial_{t+} \Pi_{2}$. By definition of an opposite pair (bounded by $r_{1} t r_{2} t^{-1}$ ) and the van-Kampen Lemma, there exists a diagram $\Gamma$ over $G$ with boundary $r_{1} t r_{2} t_{1}^{-1}$, where $\phi\left(t_{1}\right)=\phi(t)$. Since each path $r_{i}$ is geodesic, by Remark III.2.4 (iii) the distance between a vertex on $r_{1}$ and $r_{2}$ is not greater than $|t|+8 \boldsymbol{\delta}$, hence there exists a vertex $o_{1}^{\prime}$ on $r_{2}$ such that $\left|o_{1}-o_{1}^{\prime}\right| \leq|t|+8 \delta$.

Consider a subpath of the form $s_{1} t^{\prime} s_{2}^{\prime}$ on $\partial \Gamma$, where $s_{1}$ is a subpath of $r_{1}^{ \pm 1}, s_{2}^{\prime}$ is a subpath of $r_{2}^{ \pm 1}$, $\left(s_{1}\right)_{-}=o_{1},\left(s_{2}^{\prime}\right)_{+}=o_{1}^{\prime}, t^{\prime}$ is either $t$ or $t_{1}$.

Let $P$ be a geodesic word equal in $G$ to the label of the path $s_{1} t^{\prime} s_{2}^{\prime}$, so $|P| \leq|t|+8 \delta$. Now we consider $s_{1} t^{\prime} s_{2}^{\prime}$ as a subpath of boundary $\partial \Delta$, so $t^{\prime}$ is $t$. We choose a path $a$ on $\partial \Pi_{2}$ between $o_{1}^{\prime}$ and $o_{2}$ satisfying inequality $|a| \leq \frac{1}{2}\left|\partial \Pi_{2}\right|$. Define the path $s_{2}$ to be $s_{2}^{\prime} a$ after elimination of returns, hence $\phi\left(s_{2}^{\prime} a\right)=\phi\left(s_{2}\right)$ in a free group generated by $S$. Since the boundary labels of $\Delta$ and $\Gamma$ are the same, we may consider the path $s_{1} t^{\prime} s_{2}^{\prime}$ as a path $s_{1} t s_{2}^{\prime}$ in $\Delta$. We have that $\phi\left(s_{1} t s_{2}^{\prime}\right)=P$ in $G$, and so the following first two equalities hold in the free group generated by $S$ while the last one holds in $G$ :

$$
\phi\left(s_{1} t s_{2}\right)=\phi\left(s_{1} t^{\prime} s_{2}^{\prime} s\right)=\phi\left(s_{1} t s_{2}^{\prime}\right) \phi(a)=P \phi(a) .
$$

To establish (III.4), we observe that the path $\left(s_{1}^{-1} \partial_{o_{1}} \Pi_{1} s_{1}\right) t\left(s_{2} \partial_{o_{2}} \Pi_{2} s_{2}^{-1}\right) t^{-1}$ coincide with $\left(\partial_{t_{-}} \Pi_{1}\right) t\left(\partial_{t_{+}} \Pi_{2}\right) t^{-1}$ after the elimination of returns. Thus

$$
\phi\left(\left(s_{1}^{-1} \partial_{o_{1}} \Pi_{1} s_{1}\right) t\left(s_{2} \partial_{o_{2}} \Pi_{2} s_{2}^{-1}\right) t^{-1}\right)=\left(\partial_{t_{-}} \Pi_{1}\right) t\left(\partial_{t_{+}} \Pi_{2}\right) t^{-1}=1 \text { in } G,
$$

Figure III.2: $\varepsilon$-Contiguity

which after conjugation provides $\phi^{-1}\left(s_{1} t s_{2}\right) \phi\left(\partial_{o_{1}} \Pi_{1}\right) \phi\left(s_{1} t s_{2}\right) \phi\left(\partial_{o_{2}} \Pi_{2}\right)=1$ in $G$ providing (III.4).
The following notion of $\varepsilon$-contiguity subdiagram will be used extensively. Let $\Delta$ be a diagram over $G_{1}$. Let $u_{1}$ and $u_{2}$ be a pair of paths in $\Delta$ with subpaths $q_{1}$ and $q_{2}$ respectively, such that there exists a pair of simple paths $p_{1}, p_{2},\left|p_{1}\right|,\left|p_{2}\right| \leq \varepsilon$ and suppose that a path $p_{1} q_{1} p_{2} q_{2}$ bounds a disc diagram $\Gamma$ which does not contain any $\mathscr{R}$-faces (see Figure IV.1). Then we call $\Gamma$ an $\varepsilon$-contiguity subdiagram between paths $u_{1}$ and $u_{2}$. When we talk about the contiguity subdiagram $\Gamma$ between $u_{1}$ and $u_{2}$ we use the formula $\partial\left(u_{1}, \Gamma, u_{2}\right)=$ $p_{1} q_{1} p_{2} q_{2}$ to define notation for arcs of $\Gamma$. In this case $q_{1}, q_{2}$ are referred to as contiguity arcs and $p_{1}, p_{2}$ as side arcs of the $\varepsilon$-contiguity subdiagram $\Gamma$. We usually consider contiguity subdiagrams between a pair of $\mathscr{R}$-faces or between an $\mathscr{R}$-face and a boundary path (i.e. $u_{1}$ is the boundary path of $\mathscr{R}$-face $\Pi_{1}$ and $u_{2}$ is the boundary path of $\mathscr{R}$-face $\Pi_{2}$ or is a subpath of the boundary of $\Delta$ ). If $u_{1}$ is the boundary of an $\mathscr{R}$-face $\Pi_{1}$, $u_{2}$ is a path of a boundary of an $\mathscr{R}$-face $\Pi_{2}$ with $\varepsilon$-contiguity diagram $\Gamma$ described above then we define the degree of contiguity of $\Pi_{1}$ to $\Pi_{2}$ to be $\left(\Pi_{1}, \Gamma, \Pi_{2}\right)=\frac{\left\|q_{1}\right\|}{\left\|\Pi_{1}\right\|}$ (or, if $u_{2}$ is a boundary subpath of $\Delta$, the degree of contiguity of $\Pi_{1}$ to the boundary subpath $u_{2}$ to be $\left.\left(\Pi_{1}, \Gamma, u_{2}\right)=\frac{\left\|q_{1}\right\|}{\left\|\Pi_{1}\right\|}\right)$.

The next two Lemmas provide the basic connection between the notions of small cancellation and diagrams over hyperbolic groups.

Lemma III.2.6. (i)([Olsh93], Lemma 5.2) If the symmetized system $\mathscr{R}$ satisfies the $C(\varepsilon, \mu, \rho)$-condition, then for any reduced diagram $\Delta$ and any $\varepsilon$-contiguity subdiagram $\Gamma$ of a face $\Pi_{1}$ to another face $\Pi_{2}$ the following inequalities hold:

$$
\left\|q_{1}\right\|<\mu\left\|\partial \Pi_{1}\right\|,\left\|q_{2}\right\|<\mu\left\|\partial \Pi_{2}\right\|
$$

where $\partial\left(\Pi_{1}, \Gamma, \Pi_{2}\right)=p_{1} q_{1} p_{2} q_{2}$ for any reduced diagram $\Delta$ over $G_{1}$.
(ii) Suppose a diagram $\Delta$ has a pair of $\mathscr{R}$-faces $\Pi_{1}, \Pi_{2}$ and an $\varepsilon$-contiguity subdiagram $\Gamma(\partial \Gamma=$ $p_{1} q_{1} p_{2} q_{2}$ ) such that

$$
\max \left\{\left(\Pi_{1}, \Gamma, \Pi_{2}\right),\left(\Pi_{2}, \Gamma, \Pi_{1}\right)\right\} \geq \mu
$$

Then $\Pi_{1}, \Pi_{2}$ are opposite with respect to each of the paths $p_{1}, p_{2}$.
Note that part 2 of the above Lemma is an immediate corollary of small cancellation property $\square$.
Lemma III.2.7. ([OIOsSa], Lemma 4.6) For any hyperbolic group $G$ there exists $\mu_{0}>0$ such that for any $0<\mu \leq \mu_{0}$ there are $\varepsilon \geq 0$ and $\rho$ (it is suffice to choose $\rho>\frac{10^{6} \varepsilon}{\mu}$ ) with the following property:

Let the symmetized system $\mathscr{R}$ satisfy the $C(\varepsilon, \mu, \rho)$-condition and furthermore let $\Delta$ be a reduced disc diagram over $G_{1}$ whose boundary $\partial \Delta$ is decomposed into geodesic sections $q^{1}, \ldots, q^{r}$, where $1 \leq r \leq 12$.

Figure III.3: $C(\varepsilon, \mu, \rho)=>C^{\prime}(2 \mu)$


Then, provided $\Delta$ has an $\mathscr{R}$-face, there exists a reduced diagram $\Delta^{\prime}$ equivalent to $\Delta$, an $\mathscr{R}$-face $\Pi$ in $\Delta$ and disjoint $\varepsilon$-contiguity subdiagrams $\Gamma_{1}, \ldots, \Gamma_{r}$ (some of them can be absent) of $\Pi$ to $q^{1}, \ldots, q^{r}$ respectively such that

$$
\left(\Pi, \Gamma_{1}, q_{1}\right)+\cdots+\left(\Pi, \Gamma_{r}, q_{r}\right)>1-23 \mu
$$

The following Lemma is a special case of that in [Olsh93]:
Lemma III.2.8. ([Olsh93], Lemmas 6.7, 7.4) Let $G$ be a non-elementary hyperbolic group. There exists $\mu_{0}>0$ such that for any $0<\mu \leq \mu_{0}$ there exists $\varepsilon \geq 0$ such that for every $N>0$ there exists $\rho>0$ with the following property:
if $\mathscr{R}$ is finite and satisfies $C(\varepsilon, \mu, \rho)$ then $G_{1}$ is a non-elementary hyperbolic group and $W=1$ in $G_{1}$ if and only if $W=1$ in $G$ for every word $W$ with $\|W\| \leq N$.

Definition III.2.9. We say that a system $\mathscr{R}$ of geodesic words satisfies the $\tilde{C}(\varepsilon, \mu, \rho)$-condition if $\mathscr{R}$ is symmetrized, satisfies $C(\varepsilon, \mu, \rho)$-condition and consists of words which represent cyclically reduced elements in $G$.
III. 3 Condition $C^{\prime}(\mu)$ and connection to $C(\varepsilon, \mu, \rho)$-condition

Remark III.3.1. Suppose the system of geodesic words $\mathscr{R}$ satisfies $\tilde{C}(\varepsilon, \mu, \rho)$-condition, $\mu<1 / 100, \varepsilon \geq$ $\varepsilon_{0} \geq 6 \delta, \rho>\frac{500 \delta}{\mu(1-8 \mu)}$. Then $\mathscr{R}$ satisfies $C^{\prime}(2 \mu)$.

Proof Take arbitrary words $R_{1}, R_{2} \in \mathscr{R}$. We denote by $M$ the minimum $\min \left(\left|R_{1}\right|,\left|R_{2}\right|\right)$. To check the condition $C^{\prime}(2 \mu)$ we assume that $\left\langle a R_{1} b, R_{2}\right\rangle>2 \mu M$ for some $a, b \in G$ such that $|a|,|b| \leq 100 \delta$.

We denote by $W$ a geodesic equal to $a R_{1} b$, by $v$ a path $R_{2}$ and by $\gamma$ a path $a R_{1} b$ in the Cayley graph $\operatorname{Cay}(G)$.

Consider vertices $o_{2}$ on $v$ and $o_{3}$ on the geodesic $W$ at distance $[2 \mu M]$ from identity vertex 1 . By Remark II. 1.5 (part 1), we have that $\Phi\left(o_{2}\right)=\Phi\left(o_{3}\right)$ and (by part 2) $\left|o_{2}-o_{3}\right| \leq 4 \delta$. Now we may apply Lemma II.1.1 (for $K=100 \delta$ ) to segments $\gamma R_{1}, W$ and hence there exists a subsegment $[u, v]$ of $W$ such that $|u-e| \leq 102 \delta,\left|v-\gamma_{+}\right| \leq 102 \delta$ and $[u, v]$ is within $6 \delta$-neighborhood of $\gamma_{\gamma} R_{1}$. Vertex $o_{3}$ lies on $[u, v]$ because on one hand $\left|o_{3}-e\right|=[2 \mu M]>2 K+20 \delta$ and on the other hand

$$
\left|o_{3}-\gamma_{+}\right| \geq\left|R_{1}\right|-|a|-|b|-[2 \mu M] \geq(1-3 \mu) M>2 K+20 \delta
$$

We get that $o_{3}$ is within $6 \delta$-neighborhood of some vertex $o_{1}$ on path ${ }_{\gamma} R_{1}$.
We consider two subsegments $\left[e, o_{2}\right]$ and $\left[\left({ }_{\gamma} a\right)_{+}, o_{1}\right]$ of $v$ and ${ }_{\gamma} R_{1}$ respectively and apply Lemma II.1.1 to get that there exists a subsegment $q_{2}$ of $R_{2}$ between $e$ and $o_{2}$ such that

$$
\left|q_{2}\right| \geq[2 \mu M]-200 \delta-4 \delta>\frac{3}{2} \mu M+20 \delta
$$

which is within $6 \delta$-neighborhood from $\gamma_{\gamma} R_{1}$. Now define $q_{1}$ to be a subsegment of $\gamma R_{1}$ with $\left|q_{1-}-q_{2-}\right|,\left|q_{1+}-q_{2+}\right| \leq$ 68 .

We have that

$$
\begin{equation*}
\left|q_{i}\right|>\frac{3}{2} \mu \min \left(\left|R_{1}\right|,\left|R_{2}\right|\right) \text { for } \mathrm{i}=1,2 . \tag{III.5}
\end{equation*}
$$

Define $p_{1}\left(p_{2}\right)$ to be a geodesic path between $q_{2-}, q_{1-}\left(q_{1+}, q_{2+}\right)$, see Figure III.3. To justify the Figure III.3, we must show that $\left|\left({ }_{\gamma} a\right)_{+}-\left(q_{1}\right)_{-}\right|<\left|\left({ }_{\gamma} a\right)_{+}-\left(q_{1}\right)_{+}\right|$(this inequality follows from [Olsh93] Lemma 1.10, but we include the argument here). By triangle inequality and definition of $q_{1}$, we have that

$$
\left|\left({ }_{\gamma} a\right)_{+}-\left(q_{1}\right)_{-}\right| \leq|a|+\left|p_{1}\right|+\left|e-\left(q_{1}\right)_{-}\right| \leq 100 \delta+6 \delta+102 \delta=208 \delta ;
$$

on the other hand,

$$
\begin{gathered}
\left|(\gamma a)_{+}-\left(q_{1}\right)_{+}\right| \geq\left|e-\left(q_{2}\right)_{+}\right|-\left|p_{2}\right|-|a|=\left|e-\left(q_{2}\right)_{-}\right|+\left|q_{2}\right|-\left|p_{2}\right|-|a| \geq \\
102 \delta+\frac{3}{2} \mu M+20 \delta-100 \delta-6 \delta>\mu M \geq 500 \delta
\end{gathered}
$$

and hence we got $\left|\left({ }_{\gamma} a\right)_{+}-\left(q_{1}\right)_{-}\right|<\left|\left({ }_{\gamma} a\right)_{+}-\left(q_{1}\right)_{+}\right|$, as desired.
We denote labels of $q_{i}$ and $p_{i}$ as $Q_{i}$ and $P_{i}$ respectively. Define four subpaths $r_{i j}, i, j \in\{1,2\}$ by equalities ${ }_{\gamma} R_{1}=r_{11} r_{12}, v=r_{21} r_{22}$ and $\left(r_{11}\right)_{+}=\left(p_{1}\right)_{+},\left(r_{21}\right)_{+}=\left(p_{1}\right)_{-}$. Define words $R_{i j}, Q^{\prime}, Q^{\prime \prime}$ by equalities $\operatorname{lab}\left(r_{i j}\right)=R_{i j}, R_{12} R_{11} \equiv Q_{1} Q^{\prime}, R_{22} R_{21} \equiv Q_{2} Q^{\prime \prime}$. We have that $Q_{2}=P_{1} Q_{1} P_{2}^{-1},\left\|P_{i}\right\| \leq 6 \delta$, and taking into account the inequality (III.5) we conclude by $\tilde{C}(\varepsilon, \mu, \rho)$-condition that $P_{1} R_{12} R_{11} P^{-1}=R_{22} R_{21}$, which in turn is equivalent to $\left(R_{21} P_{1} R_{11}^{-1}\right)\left(R_{11} R_{12}\right)\left(R_{11} P_{1}^{-1} R_{21}^{-1}\right)=R_{21} R_{22}$. It remains to observe that $a=\left(R_{21} P_{1} R_{11}^{-1}\right)$ and so $a R_{1} a^{-1}=R_{2}$.

Corollary III.3.2. Suppose $\mathscr{R}$ satisfies $\tilde{C}(\varepsilon, \mu, \rho)$-condition and $n \geq 1$,

$$
\begin{equation*}
\prod_{k=1}^{n} U_{k} R_{k} U_{k}^{-1}=1 \text { in } G, \text { where } U_{k} R_{k} U_{k}^{-1} \in \mathscr{X} \tag{III.6}
\end{equation*}
$$

Then (i) There exists a reducible pair $i<j$ in the sense of Definition III.1.9 and

$$
\begin{equation*}
U_{i+1} R_{i+1} U_{i+1}^{-1} \ldots U_{j-1} R_{j-1} U_{j-1}^{-1}=U_{i} R_{i} U_{i}^{-1} \ldots U_{j} R_{j} U_{j}^{-1} \text { in } G . \tag{III.7}
\end{equation*}
$$

(ii) For every reducible pair $i<j$ in (III.6), there exists a van-Kampen diagram $\Delta^{\prime}$ over $G$ with the boundary $\gamma^{\prime}$ labeled by the word $U_{1} R_{1} U_{1}^{-1} \ldots U_{n} R_{n} U_{n}^{-1}$ and a subdiagram $\Gamma$ in $\Delta^{\prime}$ with boundary $p_{1} q_{1} p_{2} q_{2}$ such that $q_{1}$ is a subpath of $\gamma^{\prime} R_{i}$,
$q_{2}$ is a subpath of $\gamma^{\prime} R_{j},\left|p_{i}\right| \leq 11 \delta+3$ and $\max \left(\frac{\left|q_{1}\right|}{\left|R_{i}\right|}, \frac{\left|q_{2}\right|}{\left|R_{j}\right|}\right) \geq 2 \mu-\frac{10 \delta+3}{\rho}$. The only vertices of paths $p_{i}$ that are on the boundary of $\Delta$ are initial and terminal vertices $p_{i \pm}$.
(iii) Consider the diagram $\Delta^{\prime}$ from part (ii) and let $v^{\prime}$ be any of the four paths given by the formula $v^{\prime}=\gamma^{\prime}\left(U_{i}^{ \pm 1}\right) s_{1} p_{1}^{-1} s_{2 \gamma^{\prime}}\left(U_{j}^{ \pm 1}\right)$, where $s_{1}$ is a subpath of $\gamma^{\prime} R_{i}, s_{2}$ is a subpath of $\gamma^{\prime} R_{j}$. Then

$$
\phi\left(\left(\gamma^{\prime} U_{i}\right)^{ \pm 1} s_{1} p_{1}^{-1} s_{2}\left(\gamma_{\gamma} U_{j}^{ \pm 1}\right)\right)=\prod_{k=i+d}^{j-c} U_{k} R_{k} U_{k}^{-1} \text { in } G,
$$

where $c, d$ take values 0 or 1 depending on the path $v^{\prime}$ and $(c, d) \neq(0,0)$. Moreover, depending on values $c$ and $d$, the word $H \equiv \prod_{k=i+c}^{j-d} U_{k} R_{k} U_{k}^{-1}$ conjugates $U_{i} R_{i} U_{i}^{-1}$ to $U_{j} R_{j}^{ \pm 1} U_{j}^{-1}$, namely:

$$
H^{-1} U_{i} R_{i} U_{i}^{-1} H=U_{j} R_{j}^{e} U_{j}^{-1}, \text { where } e \in\{ \pm 1\} .
$$

Proof By Remark III.3.1, $\tilde{C}(\varepsilon, \mu, \rho)$-condition implies the condition $C^{\prime}(2 \mu)$. The product $\prod_{k=1}^{n} U_{k} R_{k} U_{k}^{-1}$ equals to identity in $G$ so by Lemma III.1.10 it is not reduced in the sense of Definition III.1.9. Hence there exists a reducible pair $i<j$ (in particular, we have that $\left|R_{i}\right|=\left|R_{j}\right|$ ) such that the approximation tree for $a_{i}, b_{i}, a_{j}, b_{j}$ is of shape on Figure III. 1 and by Lemma III.1.8 the corresponding geodesic word $Y$ satisfies:

$$
\begin{equation*}
|Y| \geq 2 \mu M+10 \delta+3, \text { where } M=\left|R_{i}\right| . \tag{III.8}
\end{equation*}
$$

Lemma III.1.8 also provides the equation (III.2) and thus (i) is proved.
Diagram $\Delta^{\prime}$ over $G$ with boundary $\gamma^{\prime}$ labeled by $\prod_{k=1}^{n} U_{k} R_{k} U_{k}^{-1}$ exists by van-Kampen Lemma. Consider the map $\phi^{\prime}: \Delta^{\prime} \longmapsto \operatorname{Cay}(G)$. We denote $\phi^{\prime}\left(\gamma^{\prime}\right)$ as $\gamma^{\prime \prime}\left(\right.$ a path in $\operatorname{Cay}(G)$ with label $\prod_{k=1}^{n} U_{k} R_{k} U_{k}^{-1}$ ). We adopt notations from the definition of a reducible pair $i<j$ and Figure III.1. Consider a geodesic path $\alpha$ in $\operatorname{Cay}(G)$ starting from $a_{i}$ with label $X Y Z$ (hence it ends at $b_{i}$ ) and a geodesic up to $18 \delta+6$ path $\beta$ in $\operatorname{Cay}(G)$ starting from $a_{j}$ with label $U^{-1} Y^{-1} V$ (it ends at $b_{j}$ ). By definition of $X, Y, Z, U, V$, we have $\left({ }_{\alpha} Y\right)^{-1}={ }_{\beta} Y^{-1}$. From the fact that $X Y Z$ is geodesic, it follows from Remark II.1.3 (ii) that there exists a subpath $q_{1}^{\prime}$ of $\gamma^{\prime \prime} R_{i}$ such that:

$$
\begin{equation*}
\left|{ }_{\alpha} Y_{-}-q_{1-}^{\prime}\right|,\left|{ }_{\alpha} Y_{+}-q_{1+}^{\prime}\right| \leq \delta, \tag{III.9}
\end{equation*}
$$

which implies that:

$$
\begin{equation*}
\left|q_{1}^{\prime}\right| \geq|Y|-2 \delta \tag{III.10}
\end{equation*}
$$

Similarly, we consider the path $\beta$ geodesic up to $18 \delta+6$ and apply again Remark II.1.3 (ii) to obtain that there exists a subpath $q_{2}^{\prime}$ of $\gamma^{\prime \prime} R_{j}$ such that:

$$
\begin{equation*}
\left|{ }_{\alpha} Y_{-}-q_{2+}^{\prime}\right|,\left|{ }_{\alpha} Y_{+}-q_{2-}^{\prime}\right| \leq(9 \delta+3)+\delta, \tag{III.11}
\end{equation*}
$$

and hence :

$$
\begin{equation*}
\left|q_{2}^{\prime}\right| \geq|Y|-20 \delta-6 . \tag{III.12}
\end{equation*}
$$

The inequalities (III.9), (III.11) imply also that $\left|q_{1-}^{\prime}-q_{2+}^{\prime}\right|,\left|q_{1+}^{\prime}-q_{2-}^{\prime}\right| \leq 11 \delta+3$.
Consider subpaths $q_{1}$ of ${ }_{\gamma} R_{i}$ and $q_{2}$ of ${ }_{\gamma} R_{j}$ in the boundary $\partial \Delta^{\prime}$ such that $\phi^{\prime}\left(q_{i-}\right)=q_{i-}^{\prime}, \phi^{\prime}\left(q_{i+}\right)=q_{i+}^{\prime}$.

Figure III.4: Standard Diagram


The Remark III.2.4 implies that (after some elementary transformations) there exists a subdiagram $\Gamma$ in $\Delta^{\prime}$ with boundary $p_{1} q_{1} p_{2} q_{2}$, vertices of $p_{i}$ are interior except for initial and terminal ones and $\left|p_{i}\right| \leq 11 \delta+3$. Equations (III.10), (III.12), (III.8) provide that:
$\max \left(\frac{\left|q_{1}\right|}{\left|R_{i}\right|}, \frac{\left|q_{2}\right|}{R_{j} \mid}\right) \geq \frac{|Y|-20 \delta-6}{M} \geq \frac{2 \mu M+10 \delta+3-20 \delta-6}{M} \geq 2 \mu-\frac{10 \delta+3}{M}$. Part (ii) is proved.
To justify part (iii) we look at each of the 4 options for the path $v^{\prime}$. For example, if $v^{\prime}=\left({ }_{\gamma} U_{i}\right) s_{1} p_{1}^{-1} s_{2}\left(\gamma_{\gamma} U_{j}^{-1}\right)$ then $\phi^{\prime}$ maps the vertex $v_{-}=\left({ }_{\gamma} U_{i}\right)_{-}$of $\Delta^{\prime}$ to the vertex $g_{i-1}=\prod_{k=1}^{i-1} U_{k} R_{k} U_{k}^{-1}$ in $\operatorname{Cay}(G), v_{+}^{\prime}=\left({ }_{\gamma} U_{j}^{-1}\right)_{+}$ to the vertex $g_{j}=\prod_{k=1}^{j} U_{k} R_{k} U_{k}^{-1}$ in $\operatorname{Cay}(G)$. Hence $\operatorname{lab}\left(\phi^{\prime}\left(v^{\prime}\right)\right)=g_{i-1}^{-1} g_{j}=\prod_{k=i}^{j} U_{k} R_{k} U_{k}^{-1}$.

A direct computation using the relation (III.7) yields that for every possible value of $c$ and $d$ the word $H$ conjugates $U_{i} R_{i} U_{i}^{-1}$ to $U_{j} R_{j}^{ \pm 1} U_{j}^{-1}$. For example, $H \equiv U_{i+1} R_{i+1} U_{i+1}^{-1} \ldots U_{j} R_{j} U_{j}^{-1}$ conjugates $U_{i} R_{i} U_{i}^{-1}$ to $U_{j} R_{j}^{-1} U_{j}^{-1}:$

$$
\begin{gathered}
U_{i+1} R_{i+1} U_{i+1}^{-1} \ldots U_{j} R_{j} U_{j}^{-1} U_{j} R_{j}^{-1} U_{j}^{-1}\left(U_{i+1} R_{i+1} U_{i+1}^{-1} \ldots U_{j} R_{j} U_{j}^{-1}\right)^{-1}= \\
U_{i+1} R_{i+1} U_{i+1}^{-1} \ldots U_{j-1} R_{j-1} U_{j-1}^{-1}\left(U_{i+1} R_{i+1} U_{i+1}^{-1} \ldots U_{j} R_{j} U_{j}^{-1}\right)^{-1}= \\
U_{i} R_{i} U_{i}^{-1} \ldots U_{j} R_{j} U_{j}^{-1}\left(U_{i+1} R_{i+1} U_{i+1}^{-1} \ldots U_{j} R_{j} U_{j}^{-1}\right)^{-1}=U_{i} R_{i} U_{i}^{-1},
\end{gathered}
$$

where the last inequality holds by (III.7). It remains to notice that by relation (III.7), in the word $H$ the parameters $c=d=0$ may be replaced by $c=d=1$.

Definition III.3.3. For every reducible pair $i<j$ consider the diagram $\Delta^{\prime}$ from Corollary III.3.2, identify each edge of $\gamma_{\gamma} U_{s}$ with corresponding edge of $\gamma_{\gamma} U_{s}^{-1}$ and fill in the $\mathscr{R}$-faces $\Pi_{s}$ to get a van-Kampen diagram $\Delta$ over $G_{1}$ which has a $(11 \delta+3)$-contiguity subdiagram $\Gamma$ such that $\max \left\{\left(\Pi_{i}, \Pi_{j}\right),\left(\Pi_{j}, \Pi_{i}\right)\right\} \geq 2 \mu-\frac{10 \delta+3}{\rho}$. We will refer to a described diagram $\Delta$ as $a$ standard diagram for relation (III.6). We denote the image of $\gamma^{\prime}$ in $\Delta$ by $\gamma$.

By definition, the standard diagram is a spherical diagram, but for convenience we draw it on Figure III. 4 as a disc diagram with boundary label 1 .

Remark III.3.4. According to the identifications made in the definition of the standard diagram $\Delta$, any of the four paths $v^{\prime}$ in $\Delta^{\prime}$ corresponds to a closed path in $\Delta$ with label $v=\left({ }_{\gamma} U_{i}\right) r_{1} p_{1} r_{2}\left({ }_{\gamma} U_{j}^{-1}\right)$, where $r_{i}$ correspond to $s_{i}$. One can observe that different paths $v^{\prime}$ have different images in $\Delta$, but we will not use this fact later. Note that the subpaths $\left(\gamma U_{i}\right)^{ \pm 1}$ and $\left(\gamma^{\prime} U_{j}\right)^{ \pm 1}$ of $v^{\prime}$ in $\Delta^{\prime}$ correspond respectively to subpaths $\gamma_{\gamma} U_{i}$ and ${ }_{\gamma} U_{j}$ of $v$.

## III. 4 Generators of a free normal subgroup in $G$

In this section we assume that the set $\mathscr{R}$ satisfies $\tilde{C}(\varepsilon, \mu, \rho)$-condition, where the parameters $\varepsilon, \mu, \rho$ are chosen according to Lemma III.2.7 and satisfy inequalities $\varepsilon>\varepsilon_{0}=19 \delta+3, \mu<1 / 100, \rho>\frac{500 \varepsilon}{6 \mu(1-8 \mu)}$.

It is well known (see [Gro]2.2A) that a hyperbolic group contains only finitely many conjugacy classes of torsion elements. So, given a group $G$, we may choose the constant $\rho$ to be larger then the length of shortest representative in each conjugacy class of torsion elements. Thus we will assume in the sequel that for values of $\rho$ large enough:

Remark III.4.1. The set $\mathscr{R}$ consists of elements of infinite order.
Definition III.4.2. We call a (reduced) diagram $\Delta$ an octagon diagram if $\partial \Delta=l_{1} j_{1} \ldots l_{4} j_{4}$, where $l_{i}$ are geodesic in $G$, and $\left\|j_{i}\right\| \leq \varepsilon$.

Definition III.4.3. Consider an octagon reduced diagram $\Delta$ with boundary $\partial \Delta=l_{1} j_{1} \ldots l_{4} j_{4}$ and pick a number $0<\kappa<1$. We say that an arc $l_{i}$ satisfies the condition $\mathscr{U}_{\Delta}(\kappa)$ if for every diagram $\Delta^{\prime}$ equivalent to $\Delta$ and every $\mathscr{R}$-face $\Pi$ in $\Delta^{\prime}$ such that there is a contiguity subdiagram $\Gamma$ between $\Pi$ and $l_{i}$, we have the inequality $\left(\Pi, \Gamma, l_{i}\right)<\kappa$.

It is clear that if $l_{i}$ has a subpath $l$ which is a boundary $\operatorname{arc}$ of some subdiagram $\Delta_{1}$ of $\Delta$ then $l$ satisfies $\mathscr{U}_{\Delta_{1}}(\kappa)$ as well.

Lemma III.4.4. Let $\Delta$ be an arbitrary octagon diagram and $\phi\left(l_{1}\right)=U \in \mathscr{U}$, then (in notations of Definition III.4.2) $l_{1}$ satisfies $\mathscr{U}_{\Delta}\left(\frac{1}{2}+\frac{1}{5} \mu\right)$.

Proof Note that by definition of $\rho$ we have that $\frac{2 \varepsilon+34 \delta}{\rho}<\frac{1}{5} \mu$. We suppose that there exists an octagon diagram $\Delta$, with boundary arc $l_{1}, \phi\left(l_{1}\right)=U \in \mathscr{U}$. Assume that (after elementary transformations) there exists an $\mathscr{R}$-face $\Pi$ in $\Delta$ and a corresponding subdiagram $\Gamma$ between $\Pi$ and $l_{1}$ with boundary $\partial\left(\Pi, \Gamma, l_{1}\right)=p_{1} q_{1} p_{2} q_{2}$ such that $\left(\Pi, \Gamma, l_{1}\right) \geq \frac{1}{2}+\frac{2 \varepsilon+34 \delta}{\rho}$.

Now we may apply Remark III.2.4(ii) to the diagram $\Gamma$ and conclude that (after elementary transformations) there exists a subdiagram $\Gamma^{\prime}$ of $\Gamma$ with boundary $p_{1}^{\prime} q_{1}^{\prime} p_{2}^{\prime} q_{2}^{\prime}$ such that $q_{i}^{\prime}$ are subpaths of $q_{i}$ and:

$$
\begin{equation*}
\left|p_{i}^{\prime}\right| \leq 6 \delta,\left|q_{1}^{\prime}\right|=\left|q_{1}\right|-2 \varepsilon-4 \delta \tag{III.13}
\end{equation*}
$$

By definition of $q_{1}^{\prime}$, we have $\left|q_{1}^{\prime}\right|=\left|q_{1}\right|-2 \varepsilon-4 \delta \geq \frac{1}{2}|\partial \Pi|+30 \delta$ and it's complement $q_{3}^{\prime}\left(\partial \Pi=q_{1}^{\prime} q_{3}^{\prime}\right)$ satisfies $\left|q_{3}^{\prime}\right| \leq \frac{1}{2}|\partial \Pi|-30 \delta$. Thus the condition (i) of definition III.1.5 is satisfied.

Figure III.5: Bond Between $u$ and $v$


We define paths $l^{\prime}, l^{\prime \prime}$ such that $l_{1}=l^{\prime} q_{2}^{\prime} l^{\prime \prime}$. The equality $U=\phi\left(l_{1}\right)=\phi\left(l^{\prime} p_{1}^{\prime} q_{1}^{\prime} p_{2}^{\prime} l^{\prime \prime}\right)$ holds in $G$, moreover, by inequalities (III.13), we have:

$$
\left|l^{\prime}\right|+\left|p_{1}^{\prime}\right|+\left|q_{1}^{\prime}\right|+\left|p_{2}^{\prime}\right|+\left|l^{\prime \prime}\right| \leq\left|l^{\prime}\right|+2\left|p_{1}^{\prime}\right|+\left|q_{2}^{\prime}\right|+2\left|p_{2}^{\prime}\right|+\left|l^{\prime \prime}\right| \leq\left|l_{1}\right|+4 \cdot 6 \delta .
$$

Hence the condition (ii) of definition III.1.5 is checked for the factorization $\phi\left(l^{\prime} p_{1}^{\prime}\right) \phi\left(q_{1}^{\prime}\right) \phi\left(p_{2}^{\prime} l^{\prime \prime}\right)$ of the word $U$.

By Definition III.1.5, the word $U$ does contain more then half of a relation and thus $U \notin \mathscr{U}$ contrary to our assumption.

Definition III.4.5. Consider a reduced octagon diagram $\Delta$ with boundary $l_{1} j_{1} \ldots l_{4} j_{4}$. Denote for simplicity of notation $u=l_{1}$ and $v^{-1}=l_{3}, a=j_{3} l_{4} j_{4}, b=j_{1} l_{2} j_{2}$ and define the base point of $\Delta$ to be $o=$ $\left(l_{1}\right)_{-}$. Consider an $\mathscr{R}$-face $\Pi$ and disjoint contiguity subdiagrams $\Gamma_{u}, \Gamma_{v}$ of $\Pi$ to boundary arcs $u, v$, define boundary arcs of $\Gamma_{u}, \Gamma_{v}$ by $\partial\left(\Pi, \Gamma_{u}, u\right)=p_{1 u} q_{\Pi u} p_{2 u} q_{u}, \partial\left(\Pi, \Gamma_{v}, v\right)=p_{1 v} q_{\Pi v} p_{2 v} q_{v}$ and define $q_{1}, q_{2}$ by equality $\partial \Pi=q_{\Pi v}^{-1} q_{1} q_{\Pi u}^{-1} q_{2}$ (see Figure III.5). We say that a subdiagram $\Delta_{0}=\Delta_{0}(\Delta, \Pi)$ with a boundary path $p_{2 u} q_{u} p_{1 u} q_{2} p_{2 v} q_{v} p_{1 v} q_{1}(u, v)$-bond (through $\Pi$ ) if both values $\left(\Pi, \Gamma_{u}, u\right),\left(\Pi, \Gamma_{v}, v\right)$ are greater than $\mu$. We define subdiagrams $\Delta_{1}=\Delta_{1}(\Delta, \Pi), \Delta_{2}=\Delta_{2}(\Delta, \Pi)$ of $\Delta$ with boundaries $u_{1} p_{2 u}^{-1} q_{1} p_{1 v}^{-1} v_{1}^{-1} a$ and $u_{2} b v_{2}^{-1} p_{2 v}^{-1} q_{2}^{-1} p_{1 u}^{-1}$ respectively, where $u_{1}\left(v_{1}\right)$ is an initial subpath of $u(v)$ and $v_{2}\left(u_{2}\right)$ is a terminal subpath of $v(u)$ (recall that the orientation of the boundary is clockwise).

For an arbitrary reduced octagon diagram $\Delta, \partial \Delta=l_{1} j_{1} \ldots l_{4} j_{4}$, where $l_{i}$ are geodesic in $G,\left\|j_{i}\right\| \leq \varepsilon$, there exist a pair of (possibly empty) sets $V=\left\{\Pi_{1}, \ldots \Pi_{m}\right\}$ of $\mathscr{R}$-faces and $\Sigma(\Delta)=\left\{\Gamma_{1, u}, \Gamma_{1, v}, \ldots, \Gamma_{m, u}, \Gamma_{m, v}\right\}$ of disjoint $\varepsilon$-contiguity subdiagrams, where $\Gamma_{i, u}, \Gamma_{i, v}$ are contiguity subdiagrams such that $\Delta_{0}\left(\Pi_{i}\right)=\Pi_{i} \cup \Gamma_{i u} \cup$ $\Gamma_{i v}$ is a $(u, v)$-bond. We call a pair $(V, \Sigma(\Delta))$ a system of bonds between $u$ and $v$.

Remark III.4.6. (i) It is clear that in a non-empty system of $(u, v)$-bonds $(V, \Sigma(\Delta))$ for a reduced diagram $\Delta$ there exists a unique face $\Pi$ in $V$ such that the associated (see definition III.4.5) paths $u_{1}$ and $v_{1}$ are the
longest. Moreover, any other face $\Pi^{\prime} \in V$ belongs to $\Delta_{1}(\Pi)$.
(ii) For every face $\Pi$ in $V$ we have that

$$
\begin{equation*}
\left|u_{1}\right| \leq|u|-\left(\Pi, \Gamma_{u}, u\right)|\partial \Pi|+2 \varepsilon, \quad\left|v_{1}\right| \leq|v|-\left(\Pi, \Gamma_{v}, v\right)|\partial \Pi|+2 \varepsilon \tag{III.14}
\end{equation*}
$$

The following remark will allow us to extend systems of bonds of subdiagrams $\Delta_{i}$ to the diagram $\Delta$.
Remark III.4.7. Consider a reduced octagon diagram $\Delta$ over $G_{1}$ and assume that there is a $(u, v)$-bond $\Delta_{0}(\Pi)=\Pi \cup \Gamma_{u} \cup \Gamma_{v}$ in $\Delta$ satisfying $\left(\Pi, \Gamma_{u}, u\right),\left(\Pi, \Gamma_{v}, v\right) \geq \mu$ and two systems of $\left(u_{i}, v_{i}\right)$-bonds $\left(V_{i}, \Sigma\left(\Delta_{i}\right)\right)$ in $\Delta_{i}=\Delta_{i}(\Pi, \Delta), i=1,2$. Then the sets $V=V_{1} \cup V_{2} \cup\{\Pi\}$ and $\Sigma(\Delta)=\Sigma\left(\Delta_{1}\right) \cup \Sigma\left(\Delta_{2}\right) \cup\left\{\Gamma_{u}, \Gamma_{v}\right\}$ comprise the system of $(u, v)$-bonds $(V, \Sigma(\Delta))$ in $\Delta$.

Lemma III.4.8. Let $\Delta$ be a reduced octagon diagram with at least one $\mathscr{R}$-face with boundary $\partial \Delta=$ $a j_{1} u j_{2} b j_{3} v^{-1} j_{4}$, where $u, v, a$ satisfy the condition $\mathscr{U}_{\Delta}\left(\frac{1}{2}+\frac{\mu}{5}\right)$, b satisfies $\mathscr{U}_{\Delta}(\mu)$ and $\left|j_{k}\right| \leq \varepsilon$ for every k.
(i) Then $\Delta$ has a non-empty system of $(u, a)-,(v, a)$ - or $(u, v)$-bonds.
(ii) Assume in addition that $\Delta$ does not have $(u, a)$ - or $(v, a)$-bonds. Then, for the set $V$ consisting of all $\mathscr{R}$-faces, there exists a system of $(u, v)$-bonds $(V, \Sigma(\Delta))$ such that for every $\mathscr{R}$-face $\Pi$ in $\Delta$ there exist subdiagrams $\Gamma_{u}, \Gamma_{v} \in \Sigma(\Delta)$ satisfying:

$$
\begin{gather*}
\left(\Pi, \Gamma_{u}, u\right)+\left(\Pi, \Gamma_{v}, v\right)>1-26 \mu  \tag{III.15}\\
\max \left[\left(\Pi, \Gamma_{u}, u\right),\left(\Pi, \Gamma_{v}, v\right)\right]>\frac{1}{2}-13 \mu  \tag{III.16}\\
\min \left[\left(\Pi, \Gamma_{u}, u\right),\left(\Pi, \Gamma_{v}, v\right)\right]>\frac{1}{2}-27 \mu \tag{III.17}
\end{gather*}
$$

Proof (i) On the one hand we may consider an $\mathscr{R}$-face $\Pi$ satisfying Lemma III.2.7 such that $\left(\Pi, \Gamma_{a}, a\right)+$ $\left(\Pi, \Gamma_{b}, b\right)+\left(\Pi, \Gamma_{u}, u\right)+\left(\Pi, \Gamma_{v}, v\right)>(1-23 \mu)-\frac{4 \cdot 3 \varepsilon}{\partial \Pi \mid}$ (note that $\left(\Pi, \Gamma_{j_{i}}, j_{i}\right)|\partial \Pi| \leq 3 \varepsilon$ because $\left.\left|j_{i}\right| \leq \varepsilon\right)$. Together with condition on $b$ it means that

$$
\begin{equation*}
\left(\Pi, \Gamma_{a}, a\right)+\left(\Pi, \Gamma_{u}, u\right)+\left(\Pi, \Gamma_{v}, v\right)>(1-24 \mu)-\frac{4 \cdot 3 \varepsilon}{|\partial \Pi|} \tag{III.18}
\end{equation*}
$$

On the other hand each summand on the left-hand side of (III.19) is smaller than $\frac{1}{2}+\frac{\mu}{5}$. Hence at least two of them are larger than $12 \mu$.
(ii) We continue the considerations in the proof of part (i). We cannot have $\left(\Pi, \Gamma_{a}, a\right) \geq \mu$ because at least one of the other summands in (III.18) is larger thn $12 \mu$ and we would get a $(u, a)$ - or $(v, a)$-bond involving $a$ which is impossible. Hence we get that

$$
\begin{equation*}
\left(\Pi, \Gamma_{u}, u\right)+\left(\Pi, \Gamma_{v}, v\right)>(1-25 \mu)-\frac{4 \cdot 3 \varepsilon}{|\partial \Pi|} \tag{III.19}
\end{equation*}
$$

and so the inequality (III.15) holds for $\Pi$. The inequality

$$
\max \left[\left(\Pi, \Gamma_{u}, u\right),\left(\Pi, \Gamma_{v}, v\right)\right]>\frac{1}{2}-\frac{25}{2} \mu-\frac{2 \cdot 3 \varepsilon}{|\partial \Pi|}
$$

follows immediately since $\mu<1 / 100$, while for

$$
\min \left[\left(\Pi, \Gamma_{u}, u\right),\left(\Pi, \Gamma_{v}, v\right)\right]>\frac{1}{2}-26 \frac{1}{5} \mu
$$

it is enough to recall that $\left|q_{u}\right|,\left|q_{v}\right|<\left(\frac{1}{2}+\frac{1}{5} \mu\right)|\partial \Pi|$. We have proved the formulas (III.15)-(III.17) for the face $\Pi$ satisfying Lemma III.2.7, taking into account that (by definition of $\rho$ ): $\frac{4.3 \varepsilon}{|\partial \Pi|} \leq \frac{4.3 \varepsilon}{\rho}<\frac{1}{5} \mu$.

When $n=1$, the diagram $\Delta$ has a single $\mathscr{R}$-face $\Pi$ and we are done by the argument above.
We induct on a number $n$ of $\mathscr{R}$-faces in the octagon diagram $\Delta$ with base $n=1$. If $n>1$ we consider subdiagrams $\Delta_{i}=\Delta_{i}(\Delta, \Pi)$ for the face $\Pi$ (we follow notations of Definition III.4.5 here). It is clear that diagrams $\Delta_{i}$ satisfy the induction assumption. Each has a number of $\mathscr{R}$-faces strictly less than $n$ because neither contains the face $\Pi$, the arcs $p_{i u}, p_{i v}$ on the boundary of $\Delta_{i}$ are not longer than $\varepsilon$. The boundary arcs $q_{i}$ of $\Delta_{i}$ satisfy the condition $\mathscr{U}_{\Delta_{i}}(\mu)$ by Lemma III.2.6 because they are boundary arcs of the $\mathscr{R}$-face $\Pi$ in the reduced diagram $\Delta$. As we mentioned before the proof of the Lemma, conditions $\mathscr{U}_{\Delta_{i}}(\mu)$ for $q_{i}$ imply that there are no bonds involving $q_{i}$ in $\Delta_{i}$. The induction assumption is now checked for $\Delta_{i}$, hence there exist systems of $\left(u_{i}, v_{i}\right)$-bonds $\left(V_{i}, \Sigma\left(\Delta_{i}\right)\right)$ in $\Delta_{i}$ satisfying the conclusion of the Lemma. Finally we are in position to apply the Lemma III.4.7 to $\Delta$ relative to the bond $\Delta_{0}(\Pi)$ : we obtain a system of $(u, v)$-bonds $(V, \Sigma(\Delta))$ such that $V$ contains all $\mathscr{R}$-faces and the set $\Sigma(\Delta)$ is comprised of $\Sigma\left(\Delta_{i}\right)$ for $i=1,2$ and $\Gamma_{u}, \Gamma_{v}$. The inequalities (III.15)-(III.17) hold for every $\mathscr{R}$-face in $\Delta$ except for the face $\Pi$ by induction assumption, and for the face $\Pi$ we have obtained them above.

We denote words $U R U^{-1}$ by $A_{R, U}$. If $u$ is a path in some diagram $\Delta$, we write $A_{R, u}$ for $A_{R, \phi(u)}$.
Definition III.4.9. Define a weight of a word $A_{R, U}$ by $\psi\left(A_{R, U}\right)=|R|+4|U|$.
Lemma III.4.10. Let $\Delta$ be a reduced diagram over the group $G_{1}$ with boundary $u j_{1} a j_{2} v^{-1}$, where $u, v$, a satisfy the condition $\mathscr{U}_{\Delta}\left(\frac{1}{2}+\frac{\mu}{5}\right),\left|j_{i}\right| \leq \varepsilon$ for $i=1,2$ and there are no $(u, a)-$ or $(v, a)$-bonds. Then $\phi\left(u j_{1} a j_{2} v^{-1}\right)=$ $\prod_{i=1}^{n} A_{R_{j}, U_{j}^{\prime}}$ in $G$, where $\max _{1 \leq j \leq n} \psi\left(A_{R_{j}, U_{j}^{\prime}}\right)<4 \max (|u|,|v|)$.

Proof We proceed by induction on the number $n$ of $\mathscr{R}$-faces in $\Delta$. The conclusion of the Lemma holds for $k=0$ because $\phi\left(u j_{1} a j_{2} v^{-1}\right)=1$ in $G$ and there are no $A_{R, U}$ 's.

Assume that the Lemma is true for $n-1$. Consider a face $\Pi$ satisfying the Remark III.4.6. By Lemma III.4.8(ii), the $\mathscr{R}$-face $\Pi$ of $\Delta$ is in the set $V$ for some system of $(u, v)$-bonds $(V, \Sigma(\Delta))$, and inequalities (III.15)-(III.17) hold for $\Pi$. We recall the inequality (III.16) and assume that

$$
\begin{equation*}
\left(\Pi, \Gamma_{u}, u\right)>\left(\frac{1}{2}-13 \mu\right) \tag{III.20}
\end{equation*}
$$

in the other case proof is the same.
By the choice of $\Pi$, we have that every other $\mathscr{R}$-face of $\Delta$ is in the subdiagram $\Delta_{1}\left(\Delta_{i}=\Delta_{i}(\Delta, \Pi)\right)$ and the subdiagram $\Delta_{2}$ is a diagram over $G$ (we are using notations from Definition III.4.5 and the reader can refer to Figure III. 5 in the sequel of the proof). We consider a system of $(u, v)$-bonds provided by Lemma
III.4.8. Denote a subdiagram of $\Delta$ consisting of $\Delta_{2}, \Delta_{0}$ by $\Delta^{\prime}$. It contains a single $\mathscr{R}$-face $\Pi$, so we get the following equations in the group $G$ :

$$
\begin{equation*}
\phi\left(\partial_{u_{1}+} \Delta^{\prime}\right)=\phi\left(\partial_{u_{1+}} \Delta_{0}\right)=\phi\left(p_{2 u}^{-1}\left(\partial_{p_{2 u}} \Pi\right) p_{2 u}\right) . \tag{III.21}
\end{equation*}
$$

Now notice that paths $\partial_{u_{-}} \Delta$ and $u_{1}\left(\partial_{u_{1}+} \Delta^{\prime}\right) u_{1}^{-1}\left(\partial_{u_{-}} \Delta_{1}\right)$ coincide after the elimination of returns in the latter path, so their labels are equal in the free group generated by $S$. We get that

$$
\begin{equation*}
\phi\left(\partial_{u_{-}} \Delta\right)=\phi\left(u_{1}\left(\partial_{u_{1+}} \Delta^{\prime}\right) u_{1}^{-1}\left(\partial_{u_{-}} \Delta_{1}\right)\right)=\phi\left(u_{1}\left(\partial_{u_{1+}} \Delta^{\prime}\right) u_{1}^{-1}\right) \phi\left(\partial_{u_{-}} \Delta_{1}\right), \tag{III.22}
\end{equation*}
$$

and taking into account (III.21),

$$
\phi\left(u_{1} p_{2 u}^{-1}\right) \phi\left(\partial_{\left(p_{2 u}\right)-} \Pi\right) \phi\left(u_{1} p_{2 u}^{-1}\right)^{-1} \phi\left(\partial_{u_{-}} \Delta_{1}\right)=1 \text { in } G_{1},
$$

where the number of faces in the diagram $\Delta_{1}$, bounded by the path $u_{1} p_{2 u}^{-1} q_{1}^{-1} p_{1 v}^{-1} v_{1}^{-1}$, is $n-1$. For convenience we denote $\phi\left(\partial_{\left(p_{24}\right)-} \Pi\right)$ by $R_{1}$. By induction assumption, we have the following equality in $G$ for the boundary of $\Delta^{\prime}$ :

$$
\phi\left(u_{1} p_{2 u}^{-1} q_{1}^{-1} p_{1 v} v_{1}^{-1}\right)=\prod_{i=2}^{n} A_{R_{j}, u_{j}}
$$

where for every $1<j \leq n$ we have $\psi\left(A_{R_{j}, u_{j}}\right)<4 \max \left(\left|u_{1}\right|,\left|v_{1}\right|\right)$.
By Remark III.4.6 part (ii), we have that $\max \left(\left|u_{1}\right|,\left|v_{1}\right|\right)<\max (|u|,|v|)$. By inequalities (III.14) and (III.20), we have $\left|u_{1} p_{2 u}^{-1}\right| \leq|u|-\left(\Pi, \Gamma_{u}, u\right)|\partial \Pi|+2 \varepsilon+\varepsilon<|u|-\left(\frac{1}{2}-13 \mu\right)|\partial \Pi|+3 \varepsilon<|u|-\frac{1}{4}|\partial \Pi|$, hence

$$
\psi\left(A_{R_{1}, u_{1} p_{2 u}^{-1}}\right)=|\partial \Pi|+4\left|u_{1} p_{2 u}^{-1}\right|<|\partial \Pi|+4|u|-|\partial \Pi|=4|u| .
$$

Remark III.4.11. Let $\Delta$ be a reduced octagon diagram with boundary $\partial \Delta=l_{1} j_{1} \ldots l_{4} j_{4}$. Assume that $\phi\left(l_{1}\right)$ is a subword of some $R \in \mathscr{R}$ and $\left|l_{1}\right| \leq \frac{1}{2}|R|$. Then $l_{1}$ satisfies $U_{\Delta}\left(\frac{1}{2}+\frac{\mu}{5}\right)$.

Proof Suppose on the contrary, there exists an $\mathscr{R}$-face $\Pi$ and a contiguity subdiagram $\Gamma$ such that $\left(\Pi, \Gamma, l_{1}\right) \geq \frac{1}{2}+\frac{\mu}{5}, \partial\left(\Pi, \Gamma, l_{1}\right)=p_{1} q_{1} p_{2} q_{2}$. Then, by $\tilde{C}(\varepsilon, \mu, \rho)$-condition, $R$ and $\phi(\partial \Pi)$ are conjugate so $|\partial \Pi|=|R|$. Hence we get

$$
\frac{1}{2}|\partial \Pi| \geq\left|l_{1}\right| \geq\left|q_{1}\right|-2 \varepsilon \geq\left(\frac{1}{2}+\frac{\mu}{5}\right)|\partial \Pi|
$$

which is a contradiction.
For technical reasons we introduce a notation

$$
N_{R, U}=g p\left\langle A_{R^{\prime}, U^{\prime}} \mid \psi\left(A_{R^{\prime}, U^{\prime}}\right)<\psi\left(A_{R, U}\right)\right\rangle .
$$

We say that $A_{R^{\prime}, U^{\prime}}$ is equivalent $(\approx)$ to $A_{R, U}$ if and only if $\psi\left(A_{R^{\prime}, U^{\prime}}\right)=\psi\left(A_{R, U}\right)$ and there exists a word $H$ in $N_{R, U}$ such that $H A_{R^{\prime}, U^{\prime}} H^{-1}=A_{R, U}$ in $G$. To prove that the relation $\approx$ is a correctly defined equivalence it is enough to notice that $N_{R, U}=N_{R^{\prime}, U^{\prime}}$ whenever $\psi\left(A_{R^{\prime}, U^{\prime}}\right)=\psi\left(A_{R, U}\right)$. It is clear that equivalence classes with respect to $\approx$ are finite.

Definition III.4.12. Let $\mathscr{A}$ be a maximal set of words $A_{R, U}$ where $R \in \mathscr{R}, U \in \mathscr{U}$ such that
(i) $A_{R, U} \notin N_{R, U}$;
(ii) if $A_{R^{\prime}, U^{\prime}} \approx A_{R, U}^{ \pm 1}$, then at most one of them belongs to $\mathscr{A}$.

Lemma III.4.13. (i) Suppose that some geodesic word $U$ contains more then half of a relation, then for every $R \in \mathscr{R}$ we have that $A_{R, U} \in \mathscr{N}_{R, U}$.
(ii) If $U R U^{-1}$ is not geodesic up to $10 \delta$ then there exists a geodesic up to $10 \delta$ word $V R^{\prime} V^{-1}$ such that $A_{R, U}=A_{R^{\prime}, V}$ in $G$ and $\psi\left(A_{R, U}\right)>\psi\left(A_{R^{\prime}, V}\right)$.
(iii) $\mathscr{A}$ is a subset of $\mathscr{X}$ from Lemma III.1.6.
(iv) $\mathscr{A}$ generates $\mathscr{N}(\mathscr{R})$, moreover every $A_{R, U}$ is a product of elements of $\mathscr{A}^{ \pm 1}$ with weights not larger then $\psi\left(A_{R, U}\right)$.

Proof Pick some word $A_{R, U}$.
(i) Assume that $U$ contains more then half of a relation, then (using notations and statement of Remark III.1.7(i)) we have

$$
\begin{equation*}
A_{R, U}=A_{r_{1} r_{2}, U_{1}} A_{R, U_{1} r_{2}^{-} U_{2}{ }_{2}} A_{r_{1} r_{2}, U_{1}}^{-1} \text {, where } U=U_{1} r_{1} U_{2}, r_{1} r_{2} \in \mathscr{R} \text {, } \tag{III.23}
\end{equation*}
$$

and the following inequalities hold:

$$
\begin{equation*}
\left|r_{1}\right|+\left|U_{1}\right|+\left|U_{2}\right| \leq|U|+50 \delta,\left|r_{1}\right| \geq\left|r_{2}\right|+60 \delta . \tag{III.24}
\end{equation*}
$$

It follows from III.1.7(i) that $\psi\left(A_{R, U_{1} r_{2}^{-1} U_{2}}\right)<\psi\left(A_{R, U}\right)$. Now we use inequalities (III.24) to estimate:

$$
\begin{gathered}
\psi\left(A_{r_{1} r_{2}, U_{1}}\right)=\left|r_{1} r_{2}\right|+4\left|U_{1}\right|=\left|r_{1}\right|+\left|r_{2}\right|+4\left|U_{1}\right| \leq \\
2\left|r_{1}\right|+4\left|U_{1}\right|=2\left(\left|r_{1}\right|+\left|U_{1}\right|\right)+2\left|U_{1}\right| \leq \\
\leq 2(|U|+50 \delta)+2\left(|U|+50 \delta-\left|r_{1}\right|\right) \leq 4|U|+200 \delta-\rho<4|U| .
\end{gathered}
$$

Hence $A_{R, U}$ is equal to the product (III.23) such that both $\psi\left(A_{r_{1} r_{2}, U_{1}}\right)$ and $\psi\left(A_{R, U_{1} r_{2}^{-1} U_{2}}\right)$ are strictly less then $\psi\left(A_{R, U}\right)$ and we conclude that $A_{R, U} \in \mathscr{N}_{R, U}$. Contradiction with Definition III.4.12. Hence, if $A_{R, U} \in \mathscr{A}$ then $U$ does not contain more then half of a relation.
(ii) Suppose that $A_{R, U}$ is not geodesic up to $10 \delta$. The Remark III.1.7 (ii) implies that then there exists $R^{\prime} \in \mathscr{R}$ and a geodesic word $V$ such that $U R U^{-1}=V R^{\prime} V^{-1}$ in $G$. By the same remark, the word $V R^{\prime} V^{-1}$ is geodesic up to $10 \delta$ and $|R|=\left|R^{\prime}\right|$ and so $|U|>|V|$. Thus we have got inequality $\psi\left(A_{R, U}\right)>\psi\left(A_{R^{\prime}, V}\right)$ contradicting the choice $A_{R, U} \in \mathscr{A}$ again.
(iii) Follows from (i) and (ii) by definition of $\mathscr{X}$ in Lemma III.1.6.
(iv) By Lemma III.1.6, if $g \in \mathscr{N}$ then $g=\prod_{s=1}^{n} U_{s} R_{s} U_{s}^{-1}$ for some $U_{s} R_{s} U_{s}^{-1} \in \mathscr{X}$. Hence it is enough to show that every $A_{R, U} \in \mathscr{X}$ is equal to a product of elements of $\mathscr{A}$. We proceed by induction on possible values of $k=\psi(*)$ on the set $\mathscr{X}$.

If $A_{R_{0}, 1} \in \mathscr{X}$ has minimal weight $\psi\left(A_{R_{0}, 1}\right)$, we have that $\mathscr{N}_{R_{0}, 1}=\{1\}$ and so $A_{R_{0}, 1} \notin \mathscr{N}_{R_{0}, 1}$. By maximality of the set $\mathscr{A}$, the exists a word $A_{R^{\prime}, U^{\prime}} \in \mathscr{A}$ such that $A_{R_{0}, 1} \approx A_{R^{\prime}, U^{\prime}}^{ \pm 1}$ which implies that $A_{R_{0}, 1}=A_{R^{\prime}, U^{\prime}}^{ \pm 1}$
in $G$.
Now pick $A_{R, U} \in \mathscr{X}$ such that $\psi\left(A_{R, U}\right)=k$. There are two cases.
CASE 1. $A_{R, U} \in \mathscr{N}_{R, U}$. In this case $A_{R, U}$ is a product of words $A_{R^{\prime}, U^{\prime}}$ such that $\psi\left(A_{R^{\prime}, U^{\prime}}\right)<\psi\left(A_{R, U}\right)$ and we are done by the induction assumption.

CASE 2. $A_{R, U} \notin \mathscr{N}_{R, U}$. Consider all words $A_{R^{\prime}, U^{\prime}}$ such that $A_{R^{\prime}, U^{\prime}} \approx A_{R, U}$. Clearly, $A_{R^{\prime}, U^{\prime}} \notin \mathscr{N}_{R, U}=$ $\mathscr{N}_{R^{\prime}, U^{\prime}}$. By maximality of the set $\mathscr{A}$, there exists a word $A_{R^{\prime}, U^{\prime}} \in \mathscr{A}$ and by Corollary III.3.2 (iii) we have that there exists $H \in N_{R, U}$ such that $H A_{R^{\prime}, U^{\prime}}^{ \pm 1} H^{-1}=A_{R, U}$ in $G$. By induction assumption, $H$ is a product of elements of $\mathscr{A}$ with weights smaller then $\psi\left(A_{R, U}\right)$, while $\psi\left(A_{R, U}\right)=\psi\left(A_{R^{\prime}, U^{\prime}}\right)$.

Lemma III.4.14. Let $\Delta$ be a reduced diagram over the group $G_{1}$ with boundary upav ${ }^{-1}$ where $|p| \leq \varepsilon$, $\phi(u), \phi(v) \in \mathscr{U}, \phi(a)^{-1} A^{\prime} \equiv R \in \mathscr{R}$ for some word $A^{\prime}$ and $|\phi(a)| \leq \frac{1}{2}|R|$.
(i) Suppose that there exist an $\mathscr{R}$-face $\Pi$ and contiguity subdiagrams $\Gamma_{a}, \Gamma_{v}$ such that $\left(\Pi, \Gamma_{a}, a\right),\left(\Pi, \Gamma_{v}, v\right) \geq$ $\mu$. Then $A_{R, v} \notin \mathscr{A}^{ \pm 1}$.
(ii) Suppose that there exist an $\mathscr{R}$-face $\Pi$ and disjoint contiguity subdiagrams $\Gamma_{a}, \Gamma_{u}$ such that $\left(\Pi, \Gamma_{a}, a\right),\left(\Pi, \Gamma_{u}, u\right) \geq$ $\mu$. In addition assume that $\phi(p) A^{\prime} \phi(a)^{-1} \phi(p)^{-1}=R^{\prime}$ in $G$ for some $R^{\prime} \in \mathscr{R}$. Then $A_{R^{\prime}, u} \notin \mathscr{A}^{ \pm 1}$.

Proof (i) We define arcs of $\Gamma_{a}, \Gamma_{v}$ by equalities $\partial\left(\Pi, \Gamma_{v}, v\right)=$ $p_{1 v} q_{\Pi v} p_{2 v} q_{v}, \partial\left(\Pi, \Gamma_{a}, a\right)=p_{1 a} q_{\Pi a} p_{2 a} q_{a}$ and define $q_{1}, q_{2}$ by equality $\partial \Pi=q_{\Pi v}^{-1} q_{1} q_{\Pi a}^{-1} q_{2}$. We also define $v_{1}, v_{2}$ by equality $v=v_{1} q_{v}^{-1} v_{2}$ (see Figure III.6).

Consider a subdiagram $\Delta^{\prime}$ with boundary $p_{2 v}^{-1} q_{2}^{-1} p_{1 a}^{-1} a_{2} v_{2}^{-1}$. Observe that $q_{2}$ satisfies $\mathscr{U}_{\Delta^{\prime}}(\mu)$ by Lemma III.2.6 (because it is a boundary subpath of the $\mathscr{R}$-face $\Pi$ in the reduced diagram $\Delta$ ), $\left|p_{1 v}\right|,\left|p_{1 a}\right| \leq \varepsilon$ and $a_{2}, v_{2}$ satisfy $\mathscr{U}_{\Delta^{\prime}}\left(\frac{1}{2}+\frac{\mu}{5}\right)$ (they are subpaths of $a, v$ and $a$ satisfies $\mathscr{U}_{\Delta}\left(\frac{1}{2}+\frac{\mu}{5}\right)$ by Lemma III.4.11). Choose $\left(a_{2}\right)_{-}$as a base point of $\Delta$. By Lemma III.4.8, there exists a system of $(a, v)$-bonds $\left(V, \Sigma\left(\Delta^{\prime}\right)\right)$ such that $V$ contains all $\mathscr{R}$-faces of $\Delta^{\prime}$ and (assuming there are $\mathscr{R}$-faces in $\Delta^{\prime}$ ), by Remark III.4.6, there exists a face $\Pi^{\prime}$ such that the diagram $\Delta_{2}\left(\Pi^{\prime}, \Delta^{\prime}\right)$ does not have $\mathscr{R}$-faces. The face $\Pi^{\prime}$ is in $V$ so in order to simplify the notation we assume that $\Pi^{\prime}=\Pi$ and $\Delta^{\prime}$ itself is a diagram over $G$ (i.e. it does not contain $\mathscr{R}$-faces).

Consider an $\mathscr{R}$-face $\bar{\Pi}$ disjoint from $\Delta$ and glue $\bar{\Pi}$ and $\Delta$ together along $a$. Define $\partial \bar{\Pi}=a^{-1} a^{\prime}$ so that $\phi\left(a^{-1} a^{\prime}\right) \equiv R$. Since $\left(\Pi, \Gamma_{a}, a\right) \geq \mu$ we have that $\Pi, \bar{\Pi}$ comprise a pair of opposite faces with respect to $p_{1 a}$ hence

$$
\begin{equation*}
\phi\left(\left(\partial_{\left(p_{1 a}\right)+} \Pi\right) p_{1 a}^{-1}\left(\partial_{\left(q_{a}\right)+} \bar{\Pi}\right) p_{1 a}\right)=1 \text { in } G . \tag{III.25}
\end{equation*}
$$

Now notice that $\phi\left(p_{1 a}\right)=\phi\left(a_{2} v_{2}^{-1} q_{v} p_{1 v} q_{\Pi v} q_{2}^{-1}\right)$ in the group $G$ because it bounds the diagrams $\Delta^{\prime}$ and $\Gamma_{\nu}$ over $G$. We plug in the latter expression into the equation (IV.2) and then conjugate by $\phi\left(p_{1 \nu} q_{\Pi \nu} q_{2}^{-1}\right)$ to obtain

$$
\phi\left(p_{1 v}\left[q_{\Pi v} q_{2}^{-1}\left(\partial_{\left(p_{2 a}\right)+} \Pi\right) q_{2} q_{\Pi v}^{-1}\right] p_{1 v}^{-1} q_{v}^{-1} v_{2}\left[a_{2}^{-1}\left(\partial_{\left(q_{a}\right)+} \bar{\Pi}\right) a_{2}\right] v_{2}^{-1} q_{v}\right)=1 \text { in } G .
$$

The paths in the square brackets are equal after elimination of returns to $\partial_{\left(p_{1 v}\right)_{+}} \Pi$ and $\partial_{v_{+}} \bar{\Pi}$ respectively. Denote $R^{\prime}=\phi\left(\partial_{\left(p_{1 v}\right)+} \Pi\right)$, recall that $R=\phi\left(\partial_{v_{+}} \bar{\Pi}\right)$. Thus we have obtained that $A_{R^{\prime}, p_{1 v}} A_{R, q_{\Pi}^{-1} v_{2}}=1$ in $G$ and, conjugating by $v_{1}$, we get:

$$
\begin{equation*}
A_{R^{\prime}, v_{1} p_{1 v}} A_{R, v}=1 \text { in } G . \tag{III.26}
\end{equation*}
$$

But on the other hand we have that $|R|=\left|R^{\prime}\right|$ (because they are labels of opposite $\mathscr{R}$-faces in $\Delta$ ) and,

Figure III.6: To the Proof of Lemma III.4.14

using inequality (III.14),

$$
\begin{gathered}
\left|v_{1} p_{1 v}\right| \leq\left|v_{1}\right|+\left|p_{1 v}\right|=|v|-\left|q_{v}\right|-\left|v_{2}\right|+\left|p_{1 v}\right| \leq \\
\leq|v|-\left(\left(\Pi, \Gamma_{v}, v\right)|\partial \Pi|-2 \varepsilon\right)+\varepsilon<|v| .
\end{gathered}
$$

Hence we get $\psi\left(A_{R^{\prime}, v_{1} p_{1 v}}\right)<\psi\left(A_{R, v}\right)$ and so $A_{R, v} \notin \mathscr{A}^{ \pm 1}$.
Proof of part (ii) repeats part (i) with obvious changes in notation.
Recall that in the beginning of section 5 we chose constants $\varepsilon, \mu, \rho$ according to Lemmas III.2.7, III.2.8. Hence part (ii) of Theorem I.1.3 follows immediately from aforementioned Lemmas (and is due to Olshanskiy [Olsh93]). We prove part (i) below:

Theorem III.4.15. The subgroup $\mathscr{N}=\mathscr{N}(\mathscr{R})$ is freely generated by the set $\mathscr{A}$.
Proof $\mathscr{A}$ generates $\mathscr{N}$ by Lemma III.4.13(iv).
We have to show that the set $\mathscr{A}$ generates $\mathscr{N}$ freely. We define a partial short-lex ordering on all words in alphabet $\mathscr{A}^{ \pm 1}$. Let $W=A_{R_{1}, U_{1}}^{\varepsilon_{1}} \ldots A_{R_{k}, U_{k}}^{\varepsilon_{k}}\left(\varepsilon_{i} \in \pm 1\right), W^{\prime}=\tilde{A}_{R_{1}^{\prime}, U_{1}^{\prime}}^{\varepsilon_{1}^{\prime}} \ldots \tilde{A}_{R_{k^{\prime}}, U_{k^{\prime}}^{\prime}}^{\varepsilon_{k^{\prime}}}$, we say that $W \succ W^{\prime}$ if either
(i) $k>k^{\prime}$ or
(ii) length of $W$ is equal to length of $W^{\prime}\left(k=k^{\prime}\right)$ and there exists $m_{0} \leq k$ such that $\psi\left(A_{R_{m}, U_{m}}\right)=\psi\left(\tilde{A}_{R_{m}^{\prime}, U_{m}^{\prime}}\right)$ for any $m<m_{0}$ and $\psi\left(A_{R_{m_{0}}, U_{m_{0}}}\right)>\psi\left(\tilde{A}_{R_{m_{0}}^{\prime}, U_{m_{0}}^{\prime}}\right)$.

Let $W(\mathscr{A}) \equiv A_{R_{1}, U_{1}}^{\varepsilon_{1}} \ldots A_{R_{n}, U_{n}}^{\varepsilon_{n}}$ be a nontrivial freely reduced word (in alphabet $\mathscr{A}$ ) such that $W=1$ in $G$, assume that it is minimal with respect to the above ordering $\succ$. We are in position to apply Corollary III.3.2 and consider the corresponding standard diagram $\Delta$ for the word $W$, a reducible pair of indexes $i<j$, the standard contiguity subdiagram $\Gamma$ between $\Pi_{i}$ and $\Pi_{j}$ with $\left|p_{1}\right|<11 \delta+3$. We apply Lemma III.2.5
to faces $\Pi_{i}, \Pi_{j}$, path $p_{1}$ and vertices $o_{1}=\left({ }_{\gamma} U_{i}\right)_{+}, o_{2}=\left({ }_{\gamma} U_{j}\right)_{+}$. It provides the path $s_{1} p_{1} s_{2}$ in $\Delta$ such that $\phi\left(s_{1} p_{1} s_{2}\right)=P \phi(a)$ in $G$ with $|P| \leq 11 \delta+3+8 \delta,|a| \leq \frac{1}{2}\left|\partial \Pi_{j}\right|, a$ is a subpath of $\partial \Pi_{j}$ and (using formula (III.4)) provides the equality $(P \phi(a))^{-1} R_{i}^{\varepsilon_{i}}(P \phi(a)) R_{j}^{\varepsilon_{j}}=1$ in $G$ or, equivalently,

$$
\begin{equation*}
P^{-1} R_{i}^{\varepsilon_{i}} P\left[\phi(a) R_{j}^{\varepsilon_{j}} \phi(a)^{-1}\right]=1 \text { in } G \tag{III.27}
\end{equation*}
$$

where the the word $\left[\phi(a) R_{j}^{\varepsilon_{j}} \phi^{-1}(a)\right]$ is a cyclic conjugation of $R_{j}^{\varepsilon_{j}}$ so $R_{j}^{\varepsilon_{j}} \equiv \phi^{-1}(a) A^{\prime}$ for some $A^{\prime}$.
We have that the path ${ }_{\gamma} U_{i} s_{1} p_{1} s_{2}\left({ }_{\gamma} U_{j}\right)^{-1}$ is closed in the standard diagram $\Delta$ by Remark III.3. 4 and we have chosen $s_{1} p_{1} s_{2}$ so that

$$
\begin{equation*}
\phi\left({ }_{\gamma} U_{i} s_{1} p_{1} s_{2 \gamma} U_{j}^{-1}\right)=U_{i} P \phi(a) U_{j}^{-1} \tag{III.28}
\end{equation*}
$$

Consider a reduced diagram $\tilde{\Delta}$ with boundary $u p a_{1} v^{-1}$ such that $\phi(u)=U_{i}, \phi(p)=P, \phi\left(a_{1}\right)=A$, where $A=\phi(a), a \in \Delta, \phi(v)=U_{j}$. We will show that in fact it satisfies conditions of Lemma III.4.10. We first check conditions of Lemma III.4.14: we have that paths $u, v$ are in $\mathscr{U}$, thus they satisfy condition $\mathscr{U}_{\tilde{\Delta}}\left(\frac{1}{2}+\frac{\mu}{5}\right)$ by Lemma III.4.4 and so does the path $a_{1}$ by Lemma III.4.11. We also have that $\phi(v) R_{j}^{\varepsilon_{j}} \phi^{-1}(v) \in \mathscr{A}^{ \pm 1}$ by definition of $v$ and $R_{i}^{\varepsilon_{i}}=P A^{\prime} \phi^{-1}\left(a_{1}\right) P^{-1}$ by equation (III.27), so Lemma III.4.14 provides us that there are no $\left(u, a_{1}\right)$ - or $\left(v, a_{1}\right)$-bonds in $\tilde{\Delta}$. We have just checked the conditions of Lemma III.4.10 for the diagram $\tilde{\Delta}$ and conclude that:

$$
\phi\left(u a_{1} s v^{-1}\right)=\prod_{m=1}^{k} A_{R_{m}^{\prime}, U_{m}^{\prime}} \text { in } G
$$

where $\max _{1 \leq m \leq k} \psi\left(A_{R_{m}^{\prime}, U_{m}^{\prime}}\right)<4 \max (|u|,|v|)$.
The last relation together with (III.28) implies that $\phi\left({ }_{\gamma} U_{i} s_{1} p_{1} s_{2 \gamma} U_{j}^{-1}\right)$ belongs to at least one of the groups $\mathscr{N}_{R_{i}, U_{i}}, \mathscr{N}_{R_{j}, U_{j}}$. By Corollary III.3.2(iii), we have that $\phi\left({ }_{\gamma} U_{i} s_{1} p_{1} s_{2 \gamma} U_{j}^{-1}\right)=H$ in $G$ (where $H \equiv$ $\left.\prod_{k=i+d}^{j-c} A_{R_{k}, U_{k}}^{\varepsilon_{k}},(c, d) \neq(0,0), c, d \in\{0,1\}\right)$ and that

$$
\begin{equation*}
H^{-1} A_{R_{i}, U_{i}}^{\varepsilon_{i}} H=A_{R_{j}, U_{j}}^{e} \text { in } G \text { for some } e \in\{ \pm 1\} \tag{III.29}
\end{equation*}
$$

Suppose that $A_{R_{i}, U_{i}} \succ A_{R_{j}, U_{j}}$, then both words $H$ and $A_{R_{j}, U_{j}}$ belong to $\mathscr{N}_{R_{i}, U_{i}}$. Hence $A_{R_{i}, U_{i}} \in \mathscr{N}_{R_{i}, U_{i}}$, contradiction.

It remains consider the case when $\psi\left(A_{R_{i}, U_{i}}\right)=\psi\left(A_{R_{j}, U_{j}}\right)$. By equation (III.29), $A_{R_{i}, U_{i}} \approx A_{R_{j}, U_{j}}^{e}$ and since they are both in $\mathscr{A}$ we have that $U_{i} \equiv U_{j}, R_{i} \equiv R_{j}$. Thus we can glue together the paths $u$ and $v$ of the boundary of $\tilde{\Delta}$ and obtain a diagram with boundary $p a_{1}$ (we will also call it $\tilde{\Delta}$ ). For every $\mathscr{R}$-face $\Pi$ in $\tilde{\Delta}$ we now have that $\left(\Pi, \Gamma_{p}, p\right) \leq 3 \varepsilon$ because $|p| \leq \varepsilon$ and $\left(\Pi, \Gamma_{a_{1}}, a_{1}\right) \leq \frac{1}{2}+\frac{1}{5} \mu$ thus

$$
\left(\Pi, \Gamma_{a_{1}}, a_{1}\right)+\left(\Pi, \Gamma_{p}, p\right) \leq \frac{1}{2}+\frac{\mu}{5}+3 \varepsilon<1-23 \mu
$$

which contradicts Lemma III.2.7. Hence there are no $\mathscr{R}$-faces in $\tilde{\Delta}$ and $H=\phi\left(p a_{1}\right)=1$ in $G$. But the word $H \equiv \prod_{k=i+d}^{j-c} A_{R_{k}, U_{k}}$ is a subword of $W$ which is strictly shorter then $W$ so $W \succ H$ and $H=1$ in $G$. By minimality of $W$, we have equality $H \equiv 1$ which can only happen if $i+1=j$ so $A_{R_{i}, U_{i}}^{\varepsilon_{i}} A_{R_{i+1}, U_{i+1}}^{\varepsilon_{i+1}}$ is a subword
of $W, U_{i} \equiv U_{j}, R_{i} \equiv R_{j}$ and by the relation (III.7) in $G$ :

$$
U_{i} R_{i}^{\varepsilon_{i}} U_{i}^{-1} U_{i+1} R_{i+1}^{\varepsilon_{i+1}} U_{i+1}^{-1} \equiv U_{i} R_{i}^{\varepsilon_{i}} U_{i}^{-1} U_{i} R_{i}^{\varepsilon_{i+1}} U_{i}^{-1}=1,
$$

which is equivalent to $R_{i}^{\varepsilon_{i}+\varepsilon_{i+1}}=1$ in $G$ and, taking into account the Remark III.4.1, we have that $\varepsilon_{i}+\varepsilon_{i+1}=$ 0 . Hence $A_{R_{i}, U_{i}}^{\varepsilon_{i}} A_{R_{i+1}, U_{i+1}}^{\varepsilon_{i+1}} \equiv A_{R_{i}, U_{i}}^{\varepsilon_{i}} A_{R_{i}, U_{i}}^{-\varepsilon_{i}}$ is a subword of $W$. Contradiction with choice of $W$.

In order to deduce Theorem I.1.4 we will use the following remark.
Remark III.4.16. (i) ([Swe] Theorem 13) For every element $x$ in a hyperbolic group $G$ there exists $n>0$ and a straight word $Y_{x}$ (i.e. a word $Y_{x}$ such that $Y_{x}^{s}$ is geodesic for every $s$ ) such that $Y_{x}$ is conjugate to $x^{n}$.
(ii) Given a set of geodesic words words $X_{1}, \ldots, X_{m}$ we will denote by $\mathscr{R}_{n}=\mathscr{R}\left(X_{1}^{s_{1}}, \ldots, X_{m}^{s_{m}}, n\right)$ a system of all cyclic permutations of $R_{i}^{ \pm 1}$ where $R_{i} \equiv X_{i}^{s_{i} n}$. If $X_{1}, \ldots, X_{m}$ are straight pairwise non-commensurable words in $G$, then for every $\mu>0, \varepsilon \geq \varepsilon_{0}$ and $\rho>0$ there exists a number $n>0$ such that $\mathscr{R}_{n}$ satisfies $C(\varepsilon, \mu, \rho)$-condition independent of a choice of non-zero integers $s_{1}, \ldots, s_{m}$.
(iii) If $Y$ is a straight word in $G$ then for every integer $m$ the word $Y^{m}$ has a minimal length in it's conjugacy class.

Proof of part (ii) up to minor modifications repeats the proof of Lemma 4.1 in [Olsh93] which states the same property for $m=1$.

Part (iii). Assume that $Y^{s}=T Z T^{-1}$ for some $T$ and that $|Z| \leq\left|Y^{s}\right|-1$ then for every $k$ we have that

$$
k|Z|+k \leq k\left(\left|Y^{s}\right|-1\right)+k=k\left(\left|Y^{s}\right|\right)=\left|Y^{s k}\right| \leq 2|T|+\left|Z^{k}\right| \leq 2|T|+k|Z|,
$$

which implies that $k \leq 2|T|$. Contradiction.
Proof of Theorem I.1.4. Let us first consider a set of pairwise non-commensurable elements $x_{1}, \ldots, x_{m}$ of infinite order. By remark III.4.16 (i), for each $x_{i}$ there exists a straight word $\bar{Y}_{x_{i}}$ conjugate to $x_{i}^{n_{i}}$ for some $n_{i}>0$. Define $n_{0}=\prod_{1 \leq i \leq m} n_{i}$. Clearly words $Y_{x_{1}} \equiv \bar{Y}_{x_{1}}^{n_{0}}, \ldots, Y_{x_{m}} \equiv \bar{Y}_{x_{m}}^{n_{0}}$ are pairwise non-commensurable and, by parts (ii) and (iii) remark III.4.16, there exists an integer $K>0$ such that the system $\mathscr{R}_{K}=$ $\mathscr{R}\left(Y_{1}^{s_{1}}, \ldots, Y_{m}^{s_{m}}, K\right)$ satisfies $\tilde{C}(\varepsilon, \mu, \rho)$-condition for any choice of positive $s_{1}, \ldots, s_{m}$. By Theorem I.1.3, the group $\mathscr{N}\left(\mathscr{R}_{K}\right)$ is free and the quotient $G / \mathscr{N}\left(\mathscr{R}_{K}\right)$ is non-elementary hyperbolic.

Now consider an arbitrary set of elements $x_{1}, \ldots, x_{m}$ in $G$. If some of the elements $x_{i}$ have finite orders $n_{i_{1}}, \ldots, n_{i_{q}}$ we define $n_{0}=n_{i_{1}} \ldots n_{i_{q}}$ and replace the set $x_{1}, \ldots, x_{m}$ with $x_{1}^{n_{0}}, \ldots, x_{m}^{n_{0}}$ (which after deletion of identity elements contains only the elements of infinite order). Hence we can assume that all elements $x_{1}, \ldots, x_{m}$ are of infinite order. For every pair $x_{i}, x_{j}(i<j)$ define a pair of nonzero integers $k_{i j}, k_{j i}$ such that $x_{i}^{k_{i j}}$ is conjugate to $x_{j}^{k_{j i}}$ if $x_{i}, x_{j}$ are commensurable and let $k_{i j}=k_{j i}=1$ if the pair $x_{i}, x_{j}$ is not commensurable. Define $K_{0}=\prod_{1 \leq i, j \leq m} k_{i j}$ and let $K_{0}=1$ if $m=1$. We show by induction on $m$ that
there exists an integer $N$ such that $\mathscr{N}=\mathscr{N}\left(x_{1}^{s_{1} K_{0} N}, \ldots, x_{m}^{s_{m} K_{0} N}\right)$ is free for any choice of integers $s_{1}, \ldots, s_{m}$.
We have showed that the statement holds if the elements $x_{1}, \ldots, x_{m}$ are pairwise non-commensurable and in particular if $m=1$. Hence, in order to prove the induction step, we may assume that (after reenumeration of $x_{i}$ 's) $x_{1}$ is commensurable to $x_{2}$. Using the normality of $\mathscr{N}$ and the fact that for every $x \in G$ a subgroup
generated by $x^{a}, x^{b}$ is the equal to the one generated by $x^{g c d(a, b)}$ we get that

$$
\begin{gathered}
\mathscr{N}\left(x_{1}^{s_{1} K_{0} N}, x_{2}^{s_{2} K_{0} N}, \ldots, x_{m}^{s_{m} K_{0} N}\right)=\mathscr{N}\left(x_{1}^{k_{12} s_{1} \frac{K_{0}}{k_{12}} N}, x_{2}^{s_{2} K_{0} N}, \ldots\right)= \\
\mathscr{N}\left(x_{2}^{k_{21} s_{1} \frac{K_{0}}{k_{12}} N}, x_{2}^{s_{2} K_{0} N}, \ldots\right)=\mathscr{N}\left(x_{2}^{g c d\left(k_{21} s_{1} I_{1} \frac{K_{0}}{\left.k_{12}, s_{2} K_{0}\right) N}, x_{3}^{s_{3} K_{0} N}, \ldots, x_{m}^{s_{m} K_{0} N}\right) .}\right.
\end{gathered}
$$

Thus $\mathscr{N}$ is generated by $m-1$ elements and we may apply the induction assumption completing the proof of Theorem I.1.4.

We recall the notions of an SQ-universal group and a CEP-subgroup. A group $G$ is said to be $S Q$ universal if every countable group $K$ embeds in a quotient of $G$. Let $H$ be a subgroup of $G$, then $H$ is said to have a congruence extension property (CEP) if for every subgroup $K, K \triangleleft H$ there exists a subgroup $K_{1}$, $K_{1} \triangleleft G$, such that $K_{1} \cap H=K$. It is easy to see that if the group $G$ has a free infinitely generated CEP-subgroup then $G$ is SQ-universal (see, for example, Proposition [Olsh95]).

Proof of Corollary I.1.5 (i) If $G$ is non-elementary, there exists a pair of non-commensurable straight words $X_{1}, X_{2}$ in $G$ (see for example [OIsh93], Lemma 1.14). By Remark III.4.16, there exists a number $n$ such that $\mathscr{R}=\mathscr{R}\left(X_{1}, X_{2}, n\right)$ satisfies the small cancellation property $\tilde{C}(\varepsilon, \mu, \rho)$-condition for sufficiently small $\mu$ and hence $\mathscr{N}(\mathscr{R})$ is a free group by Theorem I.1.4. The $\operatorname{rank} \mathscr{N}(\mathscr{R})$ is greater than 1 because $X_{1}, X_{2}$ are non-commensurable.
(ii) It is a result of Olshanskiy [Olsh95] that
(*) inside every non-elementary subgroup of G there exists a free countably generated CEP-subgroup in $G$ (Theorem 4, [Olsh95]);

Consider a free normal subgroup $\mathscr{N}$ in $G$ of rank greater than 1. There exists a free infinite rank CEPsubgroup $N_{1}$ in $G, N_{1}<\mathscr{N}$ by $\left(^{*}\right)$. Hence for every countable group $H$ there exists $M_{1} \triangleleft N_{1}$ such that $H \cong N_{1} / M_{1}$. By congruence extension property, the (normal in $G$ ) subgroup $M=M_{1}^{G}$ satisfies $M \cap H=M_{1}$, so $H$ embeds in $G / M$. Clearly $M=M_{1}^{G}$ is free (being a subgroup of a free group $\mathscr{N}$ ), and thus (ii) is proved.

## III. 5 Proof of corollary I.1.6

We will often deal with paths which are geodesic up to $10 \delta$, so we set, using Lemma II.1.6, the constant $h=H(\boldsymbol{\delta}, 1,10 \boldsymbol{\delta})$.

Lemma III.5.1. Let $X_{1} \bar{R}_{1} X_{1}^{-1}=R_{1}$ in $G$, where $R_{1}$ is a $(\lambda, c)$-quasigeodesic in $G$ and the path $X_{1} \bar{R}_{1} X_{1}^{-1}$ is geodesic up to $10 \boldsymbol{\delta}$. We choose the constant $H=H(\delta, \lambda, c)$ according to Lemma II.1.6. Consider an arbitrary factorization $\bar{R}_{1} \equiv U V$ for some words $U, V$. Then there exists a cyclic conjugate $R_{2}$ of $R_{1}$ such that $X(V U) X^{-1}=R_{2}$ in $G$ and $|X| \leq H+h$.

If we assume that $\bar{R}_{1}$ is a shortest element in the conjugacy class of $R_{1}$, then $\left|\bar{R}_{1}\right| \geq \lambda\left\|R_{1}\right\|-c-2(H+h)$.
Proof We consider the paths $X_{1} \bar{R}_{1} X_{1}^{-1}$ and $R_{1}$ in $\operatorname{Cay}(G)$. Combining together Lemma II.1.6 and definition of $h$ before this Lemma we get that the paths $X_{1} \bar{R}_{1} X_{1}^{-1}$ and $R_{1}$ are within $(H+h)$-neighborhoods of each other and hence we may consider a geodesic $v$ between a vertex of the path $R_{1}$ and the vertex with
label equal to $X_{1} U$ such that $\operatorname{lab}(v)=X,|X| \leq H+h$. Vertex $v_{-}$provides the factorization $R_{1} \equiv U_{1} V_{1}$ of $R_{1}$ and we have that $X(V U) X^{-1}=V_{1} U_{1}$ in $G$ and thus define $R_{2} \equiv V_{1} U_{1}$, it is an element of $\mathscr{R}$.

If we assume now that $\bar{R}_{1}$ is shortest in the conjugacy class of $R_{1}$, we get that $\left|\bar{R}_{1}\right|=|U V|=|V U| \geq$ $\left|V_{1} U_{1}\right|-2|X| \geq \lambda\left\|V_{1} U_{1}\right\|-c-2|X|=\lambda\left\|R_{1}\right\|-c-2|X| \geq \lambda\left\|R_{1}\right\|-c-2(H+h)$, which proves the last assertion of the Lemma.

Lemma III.5.2. Let $\mathscr{R}$ be a system of words satisfying the $C(\varepsilon, \mu, \lambda, c, \rho)$-condition, choose $H=H(\delta, \lambda, c)$ according to Lemma II.1.6. Assume that $\varepsilon=\varepsilon_{0}+2(H+h)$ for some $\varepsilon_{0}>0$ and that $\lambda \rho>c+4 H+2 h+16 \delta$. Then there exists a system $\overline{\mathscr{R}}$ such that $\mathscr{N}(\overline{\mathscr{R}})=\mathscr{N}(\mathscr{R})$ and for any positive number $k$, satisfying $\lambda \rho \geq$ $\frac{k+1}{k}(c+4 H+2 h+16 \delta)$, the condition $\tilde{C}\left(\varepsilon_{0}, \mu_{0}, \rho_{0}\right)$ holds for $\overline{\mathscr{R}}$, where $\mu_{0}=\frac{\mu(1+k)}{\lambda}$ and $\rho_{0}=\lambda \rho-c-$ $2(H+h)$.

Proof We define an equivalence relation $\approx$ on the set of freely reduced words over $S^{ \pm 1}$ : words $W_{1}$ and $W_{2}$ are equivalent if and only if $W_{1}$ is conjugate to $W_{2}$ or $W_{2}^{-1}$. Then we consider a set $\left\{R_{1}, \ldots, R_{m}, \ldots\right\}$ of representatives of equivalence classes of $\mathscr{R}$ with respect to $\approx$. By Lemma III.1.2, there exist geodesic words $\bar{R}_{i}, X_{i}$ such that $X_{i} \bar{R}_{i} X_{i}^{-1}=R_{i}$, where $\bar{R}_{i}$ is geodesic up to $10 \delta$ and is shortest in the conjugacy class of $R_{i}$. Finally we define $\overline{\mathscr{R}}$ to be the closure of $\left\{\bar{R}_{1}, \ldots, \bar{R}_{m}, \ldots\right\}$ with respect to cyclic conjugates and inverses. Clearly $\mathscr{N}(\mathscr{R})=\mathscr{N}(\overline{\mathscr{R}})$.

It remains to check that $\overline{\mathscr{R}}$ satisfies $\tilde{C}\left(\varepsilon_{0}, \mu_{0}, \rho_{0}\right)$-condition. Let $\bar{R}_{i} \equiv U_{i} V_{i}$ for $i=1,2, U_{2}=Y U_{1} Z$ for some $|Y|,|Z| \leq \varepsilon_{0}$. Assume that $\left|U_{1}\right| \geq \mu_{0} \min \left(\bar{R}_{1}, \bar{R}_{2}\right)$.

By Lemma III.5.1 and the definition of $\overline{\mathscr{R}}$, there exist $R_{i} \in \mathscr{R}$ and (geodesic) words $X_{i}$ such that $X_{i} \bar{R}_{i} X_{i}^{-1}=R_{i}$ and $\left|X_{i}\right| \leq H+h$. By Remark II.1.3, the path $p_{i}=X_{i} \bar{R}_{i} X_{i}^{-1}$ in the $\operatorname{Cay}(G)$ is within the $H+h+8 \delta$ neighborhood of a geodesic $q_{i}$ joining the ends of $p_{i}$ and, by Lemma II.1.6, $q_{i}$ is in the $H$-neighborhood of $R_{i}$. Hence we can define geodesic words $Y_{i}, Z_{i}, i=1,2$, of lengths not greater than $2 H+h+8 \delta$ and factorizations $R_{i} \equiv C_{i} D_{i} E_{i}$ such that the following equalities hold in $G: X_{1} Y_{1}=C_{1}$, $X_{2} Y_{2}^{-1}=C_{2}, C_{1} D_{1} Z_{1}=X_{1} U_{1}$ and $X_{2} U_{2} Z_{2}=C_{2} D_{2}$. We have obtained that $\left(Y_{2} Y Y_{1}\right) D_{1}\left(Z_{1} Z Z_{2}\right)=D_{2}$. Now we estimate the length of $D_{1}$ using quasigeodesicity of $R_{1}:\left|D_{1}\right| \geq\left|U_{1}\right|-\left|Y_{1}\right|-\left|Z_{1}\right| \geq\left|U_{1}\right|-2(2 H+h+8 \delta) \geq$ $\mu_{0}\left|\bar{R}_{i}\right|-(4 H+2 h+16 \delta) \geq \mu_{0}\left(\lambda\left\|R_{i}\right\|-c-(4 H+2 h+16 \delta)\right) \geq \frac{\mu(1+k)}{\lambda} \lambda\left\|R_{i}\right\|-\frac{\mu(1+k)}{\lambda}(c+4 H+2 h+$ $16 \delta)=\mu\left\|R_{i}\right\|+\mu\left[k\left\|R_{i}\right\|-\frac{(1+k)}{\lambda}(c+4 H+2 h+16 \delta)\right] \geq \mu\left\|R_{i}\right\|$.

By the small cancellation condition on $\mathscr{R}$, we conclude that $\left(Y_{2} Y Y_{1}\right)\left(D_{1} E_{1} C_{1}\right)\left(Y_{2} Y Y_{1}\right)^{-1}=D_{2} E_{2} C_{2}$ and so $Y\left(Y_{1} D_{1} E_{1} C_{1} Y_{1}^{-1}\right) Y^{-1}=Y_{2}^{-1} D_{2} E_{2} C_{2} Y_{2}$ in $G$ implying that $Y \bar{R}_{1} Y^{-1}=\bar{R}_{2}$.

We say that a set of elements $\left\{x_{1}, \ldots, x_{n}\right\}$ satisfy the condition (I) relative to some element $g$ of infinite order if
(a) $x_{i} \notin E(g)$ for every $i$;
(b) $x_{i}$ is in the centralizer of $E(G)$ in $G: x_{i} \in C_{G}(E(G))$;
(c) if an equality $a x_{i}=x_{i} b$ holds in Gor some $a, b \in E(g)$, then $a=b \in E(G)$;
(d) if $a, b \in E(g)$ and $a x_{i}=x_{j} b$, then $i=j$.

Lemma III.5.3. ([Olsh93], Lemma 3.7) ${ }^{1}$ Let $g$ be an element such that $E(g)=<g>\times E(G)$. Then for any integer $l \geq 1$, one can find elements $x_{1}, \ldots, x_{l} \in G$ satisfying the condition I relative to the element $g$.

[^2]Let us consider a set of geodesic words $W_{1}, \ldots, W_{k}$ which represent respectively elements $g_{1}, \ldots, g_{k}$, satisfying Lemma II.2.7. For every $1 \leq i \leq k$ we can choose a sequence of geodesic words $X_{0 i}, \ldots, X_{l i}$ satisfying Lemma III.5.3 relative to $W_{i}$. Define a set $\mathscr{R}_{l, m}$ as a closure with respect to taking inverses and cyclic conjugates of words $R_{1}, \ldots, R_{k}$, where $R_{i} \equiv X_{0 i} W_{i}^{m} \ldots X_{l i} W_{i}^{m}$ for $i=1, \ldots, k$.

Lemma III.5.4. ([Olsh93], Lemma 4.2) There exists $\lambda>0$ such that for every $\mu>0$ there exists $l>0$ and $c \geq 0$ such that for any $\varepsilon \geq 0, \rho>0$ there are $m_{0}>0$ such that the system $\mathscr{R}_{l, m}$ satisfies the $C(\varepsilon, \mu, \lambda, c, \rho)$ condition if $m \geq m_{0}$.

We will denote the center $C_{G}(G)$ of the group $G$ by $Z(G)$.
Proposition III.5.5. Assume that $G$ is a hyperbolic group and $Z(G)=E(G)$. Let $g$ be an element in $G$ satisfying Lemma II. 2.7 and consider an element y such that $y \notin E(g)$. Then for any integer $l \geq 1$, one can find elements $x_{1}, \ldots, x_{l} \in G$ such that each set $\left\{x_{1}, \ldots, x_{l}\right\}$ and $\left\{y x_{1}, x_{2}, \ldots, x_{l}\right\}$ satisfies the condition (I) relative to the element $g$.

Proof We take an element $g$ satisfying Lemma II.2.7 and a set $\mathscr{X}=\left\{x_{1}, \ldots, x_{l+1}\right\}$ satisfying Lemma III.5.3 relative to $g$. We only need to check the conditions of property (I) involving $y x_{1}$.
(a) Assume that $y x_{1} \in E(g)$, then $y x_{2} \notin E(g)$. Indeed, if $y x_{1}, y x_{2} \in E(g)$, then $x_{2}^{-1} x_{1} \in E(g)$. Thus $x_{1}=x_{2} b$ for some $b \in E(g)$, which contradicts the condition (d) of (I) for $\mathscr{X}$.

Hence, if $y x_{1} \in E(g)$, we can redefine $\mathscr{X}$ to be $\left\{x_{2}, x_{1}, x_{3} \ldots, x_{l+1}\right\}$ and thus each set $\left\{x_{2}, x_{1}, x_{3} \ldots, x_{l+1}\right\}$ and $\left\{y x_{2}, x_{1}, x_{3} \ldots, x_{l+1}\right\}$ satisfies (I)(a).

Condition (b) holds because $C_{G}(E(G))=G$.
(c) Assume that the equality $a y x_{1}=y x_{1} b$ holds for some $a, b \in E(g)$. If the element $a$ is of finite order, then $a \in E(G)=Z(G)$ by the choice of $g$ and thus $a=b$. If $a$ is of infinite order, then $a^{y x_{1}} \notin E(a)=E(g)$ because $y x_{1} \notin E(a)=E(g)$, which contradicts the choice of $b \in E(g)$.
(d) We can observe that an equality $a y x_{1}=x b$, where $x \in\left\{x_{2}, \ldots, x_{l+1}\right\}$ can hold for at most one element $x_{i}$. Assume on the contrary, that both equalities

$$
a_{1} y x_{1}=x_{2} b_{1}, a_{2} y x_{1}=x_{i} b_{2}
$$

hold for some $a_{j}, b_{j} \in E(g)$. Then we have $a_{1}^{-1} x_{2} b_{1}=a_{2}^{-1} x_{i} b_{2}$ and the equality $x_{2} b_{1} b_{2}^{-1}=a_{1} a_{2}^{-1} x_{i}$ contradicts property (I) for $\mathscr{X}$.

Hence we may choose a set $x_{1}^{\prime}, \ldots, x_{l}^{\prime}$ satisfying the Lemma by eliminating at most one element from $\mathscr{X}$.

For each $k$, we can choose elements $W_{1}, \ldots, W_{k}$ satisfying Lemma II.2.7, Proposition III.5.5 allows us to pick sequences of words $\left\{X_{0 i}, \ldots, X_{l i}\right\}$ for every $1 \leq i \leq k$ and any $l>0$ such that both $\left\{X_{0 i}, \ldots, X_{l i}\right\}$ and $\left\{s_{i} X_{0 i}, \ldots, X_{l i}\right\}$ satisfy the condition (I) relative to $W_{i}$. In addition to the set $\mathscr{R}_{l, m}$, we consider a set of relations $S \mathscr{R}_{l, m}$ which is a closure of the relations $s_{i} R_{i}$ for $1 \leq i \leq k$ under inversion and cyclic conjugation. Clearly, $S \mathscr{R}_{l, m}$ also satisfies Lemma III.5.4. We will need the following, slightly stronger, Corollary:

Corollary III.5.6. ([Olsh93], Lemmas 4.2) There exists $\lambda>0$ such that for every $\mu>0$ there exists $l>0$
and $c \geq 0$ such that for any $\varepsilon \geq 0, \rho>0$ there are $m_{0}>0$ and $\left\{X_{0 i}, \ldots, X_{l i}\right\}$ for every $1 \leq i \leq k$ such that each system $\mathscr{R}_{l, m}$ and $S \mathscr{R}_{l, m}$ satisfies the $C(\varepsilon, \mu, \lambda, c, \rho)$-condition if $m \geq m_{0}$.

Proof repeats that of Lemma III.5.4 [Olsh93] with minor modifications. First, as in Lemma III.5.4, we may choose $\lambda>0$ depending only on $W_{1}, \ldots, W_{k}$. Then we choose $l$ (after $\mu$ ) so that

$$
\lambda \mu(l+1) \frac{\min _{i}\left\|W_{i}\right\|}{\max _{i}\left\|W_{i}\right\|}>6 .
$$

Similarly to III.5.4, there exists $c$, depending on $W_{i}, X_{j i}, s_{i} X_{0 i}$ such that $\mathscr{R}_{l, m}$ and $S \mathscr{R}_{l, m}$ consist of $(\lambda, c)$ quasigeodesics for all sufficiently large $m$ (c does not depend on $m$ ).

Finally, one chooses $m_{0}$ (after $\varepsilon, \rho$ ) such that

$$
\lambda \mu(l+1) m_{0} \min _{i}\left\|W_{i}\right\|-c-2 \varepsilon \geq 6 m_{0} \max _{i}\left\|W_{i}\right\|
$$

and such that $\mathscr{R}_{l, m}, S \mathscr{R}_{l, m}$ consist of $(\lambda, c)$-quasigeodesics.
Remark III.5.7. Let $G$ be a hyperbolic group. Then:
(i) if $s$ is an element of finite order then there exists an element $t \in G$ such that both $t$ and $s t^{m}$ are of infinite order for any $m \geq m_{0}$ for some number $m_{0}$.
(ii) the group $G$ is generated by elements of infinite order.

Proof (i) Let $t$ be an element satisfying Lemma II.2.7. Assume that for every $m>0$ the element $\left(s t^{m}\right)$ is of finite order. Since a hyperbolic group can have only finite number of conjugacy classes of torsion elements, we can take $K>0$, independent on $m$, such that $\left(s t^{m}\right)^{K}=1$ in $G$ for every $m$. We have that values $\left(t^{-m} s^{-1}, s t^{m}\right)$ are unbounded as $m \rightarrow \infty$ and hence the values of $\left(t^{-m}, s t^{m}\right)$ are also unbounded which implies that $s \in E(t)$. But if $s$ is in $E(t)$ then $s t$ is of infinite order. Contradiction; the elements $\left(s t^{m}\right)$ have infinite order for all sufficiently large $m$.

Let $s_{1}, \ldots, s_{k}$ be a generating set for the group $G$, consider an element $t$ satisfying Lemma II.2.7. By part (i), there exists $m>0$ such that $s_{i} t^{m}$ is of infinite order for every generator $s_{i}$ of finite order. If we replace $s_{i} \in S$ with a pair $t^{\prime}=t^{m}, s_{i}^{\prime}=s_{i} t^{m}$ whenever $s_{i}$ is of finite order and keep $s_{i} \in S$ otherwise. Then the generating set $S$ satisfies (ii).

Proof of Corollary I.1.6 Assume first that $Z(G)=E(G)$ and consider the generators $s_{1}, \ldots, s_{k}$ of $G$. By Remark III. 5.7 we may assume that the orders of all generators are infinite. We consider a set of pairwise non-commensurable geodesic words $W_{1}, \ldots, W_{k}$ such that $E\left(W_{i}\right)=E(G) \times<W_{i}>$ in $G$ (see conventions before the Lemma III.5.4).

For every $l>0$ and $1 \leq i \leq k$, we choose a sequence of geodesic words $\left\{X_{0 i}, \ldots, X_{l i}\right\}$ satisfying Proposition III. 5.5 relative to $W_{i}$. We apply Lemma III.5.6 to the sets $\mathscr{R}_{l, m}, S \mathscr{R}_{l, m}$. Hence we may choose consequently $\lambda>0, \mu<\frac{\lambda}{200}, l>0, c>0, \varepsilon=\varepsilon_{0}+2(2 H(\lambda, c)+h)$ where $\varepsilon_{0} \geq 19 \delta+3$ and $\rho$ such that $\rho>\frac{1}{\lambda}\left(c+2 H+2 h+\frac{500 \varepsilon_{0}}{6 \frac{2 \mu}{\lambda}\left(1-8 \frac{2 \mu}{\lambda}\right)}\right)$ such that both $\mathscr{R}_{l, m}$ and $S \mathscr{R}_{l, m}$ satisfy $C(\varepsilon, \mu, \lambda, c, \rho)$ for some $m$. By Lemma III.5.2 there are sets $\overline{\mathscr{R}_{l, m}}$ and $\overline{S \mathscr{R}_{l, m}}$ which generate the same normal subgroups as $\mathscr{R}_{l, m}, S \mathscr{R}_{l, m}$ respectively and satisfy $\tilde{C}\left(\varepsilon_{0}, \mu_{0}, \rho_{0}\right)$ for $\rho_{0}=\lambda \rho-c-2 H-2 h$ and $\mu_{0}=\frac{2 \mu}{\lambda}$. By the choice of constants above we have that $\varepsilon_{0} \geq 19 \delta+3, \mu_{0}<1 / 100$, and $\rho_{0} \geq \frac{500 \varepsilon_{0}}{6 \frac{2 \mu}{\lambda}\left(1-8 \frac{2 \mu}{\lambda}\right)}$ and hence we may apply Theorem III.4.15 to
conclude that both normal subgroups $A=\mathscr{N}\left(\mathscr{R}_{l, m}\right)=\mathscr{N}\left(\overline{\mathscr{R}_{l, m}}\right)$ and $B=\mathscr{N}\left(S \mathscr{R}_{l, m}\right)=\mathscr{N}\left(\overline{S \mathscr{R}_{l, m}}\right)$ are free. By Lemma III.2.8 each subgroup $A$ and $B$ has an infinite index in $G$.

Clearly $A B=B A \ni s_{i}=\left(s_{i} R_{i}\right)\left(R_{i}\right)^{-1}$ for every $1 \leq i \leq k$, hence $A B=G$.
Now assume that $A B=G$ for some free normal subgroups $A, B$ in $G$. For every normal subgroup $N$ in $G$ we have that $[N, E(G)] \leq N \cap E(G)$, so $[A, E(G)]=1$ and $[B, E(G)]=1$ because the intersection of free subgroup with torsion subgroup is trivial. Hence $E(G) \leq C_{G}(A) \cap C_{G}(B)=C_{G}(A B)=Z(G)$. The inclusion $Z(G) \leq E(G)$ is immediate.

## CHAPTER IV

## HIGHLY TRANSITIVE AND PERIODIC ACTIONS OF MAXIMAL GROWTH OF HYPERBOLIC GROUPS

## IV. 1 Actions of Maximal Growth

Let $G$ be a group generated by a finite set $S$ and suppose that $G$ acts on a set $X$ from the right:

$$
x e=x,\left(x g_{1}\right) g_{2}=x\left(g_{1} g_{2}\right) \text { in } G \text { for all } x \in X ; g_{1}, g_{2} \in G .
$$

We assume that the action is transitive (i.e. $X=o G$, where $o$ is some element from $X$ ). Consider the set $B_{n}(o)$ of elements $o g \in X$ such that $g \in G$ and $|g| \leq n$. Then the growth function of the right action of $G$ on $X$ is $f_{o, S}(n)=\#\left\{B_{n}(o)\right\}$. Let $o^{\prime}=o g_{0} \in G$ and denote $\left|g_{0}\right|$ by $C$. It is clear that $B_{n}\left(o^{\prime}\right) \subset B_{n+C}(o)$ and hence

$$
f_{o, S}(n+C) \geq f_{o^{\prime}, S}(n) .
$$

Recall that the action of $G$ on $X$ is called $k$-transitive for some natural number $k$, if for any two ordered $k$-tuples $\left(x_{1}, \ldots, x_{k}\right),\left(y_{1}, \ldots, y_{k}\right)$ of distinct elements in $X$ there exists an element $g \in G$ such that $x_{i} g=y_{i}$ for every $i, 1 \leq i \leq k$. The action is said to be highly transitive if it is $k$-transitive for every natural $k$.

Consider a set $\mathscr{F}$ of functions from $\mathbb{N}_{0}$ to $\mathbb{N}_{0}$. A pair $f, g \in \mathscr{F}$ is said (see [BO], $\S 1.4$ ) to satisfy the relation $f \prec g$ if there exists a non-negative integer $C$ such that $f(n) \leq g(n+C)$ for every $n \in \mathbb{N}_{0}$. Clearly the relation $\prec$ is transitive and reflexive. Functions $f, g \in \mathscr{F}$ are said to be equivalent $([\mathbf{B O}], \S 1.4)$ if $f \prec g$ and $g \prec f$. According to the discussion above, growth functions of transitive action of $G$ on $X$ with respect to different base points $o, o^{\prime}$ are equivalent.

One can observe that the notion of equivalence of functions, which we discuss here, is stronger then that used for study of asymptotic invariants. It is easy to see that the pairs $2 n$ and $3 n$ are not equivalent in the sense of definition above and neither are the functions $2^{n}, 3^{n}$. We would also like to note that there exists a transitive action of a finitely generated free group which has maximal growth with respect to one finite set of generators and does not have maximal growth with respect to the other.

If the group $G$ acts from the right on $X=G$, we get the usual growth function and denote it by $f(n)$; clearly the growth of any action of $G$ is bounded by the usual growth function of $G$ : $f_{o, S}(n) \leq f(n)$ for any $o \in X$.

If $H$ is a stabilizer of $o$, then every element $x \in X$ is in one-to-one correspondence with a coset $H g$ in $G$ such that $x=o g$ and the right actions of $G$ on $X$ and on $H \backslash G$ are isomorphic.

Definition IV.1.1. ([BO], $\S 2)$ Let $f(n)$ be a growth function of $G$ relative to a finite generating set $S$ and consider a transitive action of $G$ on a set $X$. Then the growth of the action is called maximal if the function $f_{o, S}(n)$ is equivalent to $f(n)$.

In this paper we discuss the growth of actions of hyperbolic groups which are known to be non-amenable (see remark IV.1.2). We recall that a group $G$ is called amenable if there exists a finitely additive left invariant
probability measure on $G$ (see [Gre]).
Remark IV.1.2. Every non-elementary hyperbolic group is non-amenable.
Proof If $G$ is a non-elementary hyperbolic group, then it contains a free non-cyclic subgroup $F_{2}$ ([Gro], [Ghys], p. 157). But a free group of rank greater then one is non-amenable (see [Gre] 1.2.8). On the other hand, a subgroup of an amenable group is amenable ([Gre], Theorem 1.2.5). Hence $G$ cannot be amenable.

The famous Fölner amenability criterion ([Gre]) yields the following:
Corollary IV.1.3. For every non-elementary hyperbolic group $G$ there exists $\varepsilon>0$ (depending on $G$ only) such that $\#\left\{B_{R+1}\right\} \geq(1+\varepsilon) \#\left\{B_{R}\right\}$ for any $R$.

Remark IV.1.4. Let $G$ be a non-amenable group with growth function $f(x)$ relative to a finite generating set $S$. Assume $G$ acts on $X$ with respect to some base point $o \in X$; denote the growth function of this action by $g_{o, S}(x)$. Then there exists $c_{1}>0$ such that the inequality $g_{o, S}(n) \geq c_{1} f(n)$ holds for all natural $n$ if and only if the action has maximal growth.

Proof We first show the "only if" part. By corollary IV.1.3, there exists $\varepsilon>0$ such that the recursive formula $f(n+1) \geq(1+\varepsilon) f(n)$ holds for every $n$. We choose a natural $C$ satisfying $c_{1}(1+\varepsilon)^{C} \geq 1$. Then, applying the recursive formula $C$ times we get:

$$
g_{o, S}(n+C) \geq c_{1} f(n+C) \geq c_{1}(1+\varepsilon)^{C} f(n) \geq f(n)
$$

Now assume that the action has maximal growth, i.e. $g_{o, S}(n+C) \geq f(n)$ for some natural number $C \geq 0$ and every natural $n$. It is clear from definition of $g_{o, S}$ that $g_{o, S}(n+C) \leq(2 \#\{S\})^{C} \times g_{o, S}(n)$ and hence for $c_{1}=(2 \#\{S\})^{-C}$ the inequality $g_{o, S}(n) \geq c_{1} f(n)$ holds.

We recall the notion of exponential growth rate of a group $G$ with respect to the set of generators $S$ : $\lambda(G, S)=\lim _{n \rightarrow \infty} \sqrt[n]{f(n)}$, where $f(n)$ is a growth function of $G$.

Let $S$ be a finite generating set in $G$ and let $N$ be an infinite normal subgroup of $G$. We denote the image of $S$ under the canonical homomorphism $G \rightarrow G / N$ by $\bar{S}$. The following Theorem is often summarized by saying that the hyperbolic groups are "growth tight":

Theorem IV.1.5. [AL] Let $G$ be a non-elementary hyperbolic group and $S$ any finite set of generators for $G$. Then for any infinite normal subgroup $N$ of $G$ we have $\lambda(G, S)>\lambda(G / N, \bar{S})$.

The next corollary restates the above Theorem in terms of maximal growth.
Corollary IV.1.6. Assume $G$ is a hyperbolic group acting on some set $X$ from the right with maximal growth. Then the kernel of this action is a finite normal subgroup.

Proof Let $N$ be the kernel of the action on $X$. For any point $o \in X$ we have that $o N g=o g$ for all $g \in G$ and hence the growth function of the action $g_{o, S}$ satisfies:

$$
\begin{equation*}
g_{o, S}(n) \leq f_{G / N}(n) \text { for every } n \in \mathbb{N} \tag{IV.1}
\end{equation*}
$$

where $\bar{f}(n)$ is the growth function of $G / N$ with respect to images $\bar{S}$ of generators $S$ of $G$. If $f(n)$ is the growth function of $G$ with respect to $S$ and the growth of the action is maximal, then there exists $c_{1}>0$ such that $g_{o, S}(n) \geq c_{1} f(n)$ for every $n \in \mathbb{N}$. Hence, using (IV.1) and the last inequality, we have:

$$
\lambda(G / N, \bar{S})=\lim _{n \rightarrow \infty} \sqrt[n]{\bar{f}(n)} \geq \lim _{n \rightarrow \infty} \sqrt[n]{g_{o, S}(n)} \geq \lim _{n \rightarrow \infty} \sqrt[n]{c_{1} f(n)}=\lambda(G, S)
$$

which, by Theorem IV.1.5, can only hold when $N$ is finite.
Throughout this paper we will mainly discuss properties of left cosets. The connection between the right and left cosets is established by the following observation:

Remark IV.1.7. The right coset $H g$ intersects the ball $B_{R}$ in $G$ if and only if the left coset $g^{-1} H$ intersects $B_{R}$. $\square$

The abundance of examples of actions of maximal growth is evident from the following:
Proposition IV.1.8. Let $G$ be a hyperbolic group and $H$ be a quasiconvex subgroup of infinite index in $G$. Then the natural right action of $G$ on $H \backslash G$ has maximal growth.

Proof We first consider left cosets $G / H$. By Theorem II.2.5, there exists $C>0$ and the section $s$ such that the group $G$ is in $B_{C}(s(G / H))$. Hence for every $g \in B_{R}$ there exists $\bar{g} \in s(G / H)$ such that $|g-\bar{g}| \leq C$. By definition of $s,|\bar{g}| \leq|g|$ and thus $\bar{g} \in B_{R}$. We get that $B_{R} \subset \cup_{g \in B_{R} \cap s(G / H)} B_{C}(g)$, which implies:

$$
\begin{equation*}
f(R)=\#\left\{B_{R}\right\} \leq \#\left\{B_{C}\right\} \times \#\left\{s(G / H) \cap B_{R}\right\} \tag{IV.2}
\end{equation*}
$$

If $g_{1}, g_{2} \in s(G / H) \cap B_{R}$ then (because the map $s$ is a section) $g_{1} H \neq g_{2} H$. We get that $\#\left\{s(G / H) \cap B_{R}\right\} \leq$ $\#\left\{g H \mid g H \cap B_{R} \neq \emptyset\right\}$ and the remark IV.1.7 provides $\#\left\{g H \mid g H \cap B_{R} \neq \emptyset\right\}=\#\left\{H g^{-1} \mid H g^{-1} \cap B_{R} \neq \emptyset\right\}$, thus

$$
\begin{equation*}
\#\left\{s(G / H) \cap B_{R}\right\} \leq \#\left\{H g^{-1} \mid H g^{-1} \cap B_{R} \neq \emptyset\right\} \tag{IV.3}
\end{equation*}
$$

Evidently the sets $\left\{H g^{-1} \mid H g^{-1} \cap B_{R} \neq \emptyset\right\}$ and $\left\{H g\left|\exists g_{1}: H g_{1}=H g \&\right| g_{1} \mid \leq R\right\}$ contain the same cosets, and, by definition of the growth function $f_{H, G / H}(R)$ of natural right action of $G$ on $G / H: \#\left\{H g \mid \exists g_{1}: H g_{1}=\right.$ $\left.H g \&\left|g_{1}\right| \leq R\right\}=f_{H, G / H}(R)$. Using inequalities (IV.2), (IV.3) and the last equality we get:

$$
\begin{gathered}
f(R) \leq \#\left\{B_{C}\right\} \times \#\left\{s(G / H) \cap B_{R}\right\} \leq \#\left\{B_{C}\right\} \times \#\left\{H g\left|\exists g_{1}: H g_{1}=H g \&\right| g_{1} \mid \leq R\right\} \\
\leq \#\left\{B_{C}\right\} \times f_{H, G / H}(R)
\end{gathered}
$$

By remark IV.1.4, the action has maximal growth. $\square$
In [BO] the authors provide examples of maximal growth actions of free groups satisfying some additional properties.

Recall that in [Sta] a subgroup $H$ of a group $G$ is said to satisfy the Burnside condition if for any $a \in G$ there exists a natural number $n \neq 0$ such that $a^{n}$ is in $H$. One of the main results of the aforementioned paper is the following:

Corollary IV.1.9. ([BO], corollary 6) Any finitely generated subgroup $H$ of infinite index in the free group $F$ of rank greater than 1 is contained as a free factor in a free subgroup $K$ satisfying the Burnside condition. One can choose $K$ with maximal growth of action of $F$ on $K \backslash F$. It follows that there exists a transitive action of $F$, with maximal growth and with finite orbits for each element $g \in F$, which factors through the action of $F$ on $H \backslash F$.

The following Theorem generalizes the corollary 6 of [BO] from free groups to non-elementary hyperbolic ones:

Theorem IV.1.10. Let $G$ be a non-elementary hyperbolic group with growth function $f(n)$. Then for any $0<q<1$ there exists a free subgroup $H$ in $G$ satisfying the Burnside condition and such that the growth $f_{H \backslash G}(n)$ of the (transitive) right action of $G$ on $H \backslash G$ satisfies $f_{H \backslash G}(n) \geq q f(n)$. In particular, the growth of such action is maximal.

Consequently, for every non-elementary hyperbolic group $G$ there exists a transitive action of $G$ with maximal growth such that the orbit of action of any element $g \in G$ is finite.

Remark IV.1.11. Let $G$ be an infinite group acting 2-transitively on some infinite set $X$.
(i) If $\mathscr{N}$ is a finite normal subgroup in $G$, then $\mathscr{N}$ is in the kernel of the action.
(ii) Assume that $G$ is a non-elementary hyperbolic group and that the growth of action on $X$ is maximal. Then the kernel of this action is the finite radical $E(G)$.

Proof (i) The action is 2 -transitive and thus is imprimitive, i.e. there are no non-trivial block partitions (see [Rot], pp. 256-258). On the other hand, one easily checks that for any $x \in X$ the set $\mathscr{N} x$ is a block: if

$$
g \in G \text { and } g \mathscr{N} x \cap \mathscr{N} x \neq \emptyset,
$$

then $\mathscr{N}(g \mathscr{N} x \cap \mathscr{N} x)=\mathscr{N} x$ and, because $\#\{g \mathscr{N} x\}=\#\{\mathscr{N} x\}$, we have that $g \mathscr{N} x=\mathscr{N} x$. Using the finiteness of $\mathscr{N} x$ again, we have that $\mathscr{N} x \neq X$ and thus $\mathscr{N} x=\{x\}$ for every $x$.
(ii) The kernel $\mathscr{N}$ of action is a normal subgroup, thus we use the condition that the growth of action is maximal and Proposition IV.1.8 to obtain that $\mathscr{N}$ is finite. By definition of finite radical, we have $\mathscr{N} \leq$ $E(G)$. It remains to apply part (i).

## IV. 2 Proof of Theorem IV.1. 10

Throughout this paragraph we assume that the group $G$ is non-elementary hyperbolic. The following Lemma summarizes some geometric properties that we will need later.

Lemma IV.2.1. Let $a, b, c, d$ be points in a $\delta$-hyperbolic space $X$.
(i)Assume that $(a, c)_{b},(b, d)_{c} \leq M$. If we take $Q$ such that $(a, d)_{b} \leq Q$ then $|a-d| \geq|a-b|+|b-c|+$ $|c-d|-2 M-2 Q$. Moreover, if $|b-c|>2 M+\delta$, then we can choose $Q=M+\delta$.

Assume that the point $d$ is on the segment $[a, b]$ and
(ii) $d \in B_{M_{1}}([a, c])$ for some $M_{1} \geq 0$. Then

$$
\begin{equation*}
|d-b| \geq(a, c)_{b}-\delta-M_{1} \text { and } \tag{IV.4}
\end{equation*}
$$

$$
\begin{equation*}
|a-c| \geq|a-b|+|b-c|-2|d-b|-2 \delta-2 M_{1} . \tag{IV.5}
\end{equation*}
$$

(iii) that $(b, c)_{a}-5 \delta>|a-d|$. Then $d \in B_{4 \delta}([a, c])$.
(iv) the vertex $d$ is at least $D>0$ away from each point $a, b$. Then

$$
|d-c| \leq \max \{|a-c|,|b-c|\}+2 \delta-D .
$$

Proof (i) By definition of Gromov product and conditions of part (i), we get that

$$
\begin{gathered}
|a-d|=|a-b|+|b-d|-2(a, d)_{b}=|a-b|+\left(|b-c|+|c-d|-2(b, d)_{c}-2(a, d)_{b}\right) \geq \\
\geq|a-b|+|b-c|+|c-d|-2 M-2 Q .
\end{gathered}
$$

It remains to show the second claim in part (i). If $|b-c|>2 M+\delta$, then by (II.1):

$$
\begin{equation*}
(c, d)_{b}=|b-c|-(b, d)_{c}>2 M+\delta-M . \tag{IV.6}
\end{equation*}
$$

By inequality (IV.6) and definition (H1) of $\delta$-hyperbolic space, we have

$$
(c, d)_{b}>M+\delta \geq(a, c)_{b}+\delta \geq \min \left\{(a, d)_{b},(c, d)_{b}\right\}
$$

which implies that $(a, d)_{b} \leq M+\delta$.
(ii) Let $d^{\prime}$ be a point on $[a, c]$ at distance at most $M_{1}$ from $d$. Then, by (H1) and definitions of $d, d^{\prime}$ :

$$
\begin{aligned}
(d, c)_{b}= & \frac{1}{2}(|b-d|+|b-c|-|c-d|)=\frac{1}{2}(|a-b|-|a-d|+|b-c|-|c-d|)= \\
& =\frac{1}{2}(|a-b|+|b-c|-|a-c|)+\frac{1}{2}(|a-c|-|a-d|-|c-d|) \geq \\
\geq(a, c)_{b}+ & \frac{1}{2}\left(|a-c|-\left[\left|a-d^{\prime}\right|+\left|d-d^{\prime}\right|\right]-\left[\left|d-d^{\prime}\right|+\left|c-d^{\prime}\right|\right]\right)=(a, c)_{b}-\left|d-d^{\prime}\right| .
\end{aligned}
$$

We obtain the first claim of part (ii) using definition (H1) and the expression for $(d, c)_{b}$ above:

$$
|d-b|=(d, a)_{b} \geq \min \left\{(d, c)_{b},(a, c)_{b}\right\}-\delta \geq(a, c)_{b}-\delta-\left|d-d^{\prime}\right|,
$$

and apply it to obtain the second claim:

$$
|a-c|=|a-b|+|b-c|-2(a, c)_{b} \geq|a-b|+|b-c|-2\left(|d-b|+\left|d-d^{\prime}\right|+\delta\right) .
$$

(iii) Assume $d \notin B_{4 \delta}([a, c])$, then $d \in B_{4 \delta}([b, c])$ by (H2). We apply part (ii) to the points $b, a, c, d$ with $M_{1}=4 \delta$ and obtain that $|a-d| \geq(b, c)_{a}-\delta-4 \delta$. Contradiction.
(iv) By definition (H3), we have that

$$
|d-c|+|b-a| \leq \max \{|a-c|+|b-d|,|b-c|+|a-d|\}+2 \delta, \text { hence }
$$

$$
\begin{gathered}
|d-c| \leq \max \{|a-c|+(|b-d|-|b-a|),|b-c|+(|a-d|-|b-a|)\}+2 \delta \leq \\
\leq \max \{|a-c|,|b-c|\}+2 \delta+\max \{|b-d|-|b-a|,|a-d|-|b-a|\} \leq \\
\leq \max \{|a-c|,|b-c|\}+2 \delta-D . \square
\end{gathered}
$$

Lemma IV.2.2. Consider subgroups $\mathscr{H}_{1}$ and $\mathscr{H}_{2}$ in a finitely generated group $G$. If there exists $M \geq 0$ such that $\#\left\{B_{M}\left(\mathscr{H}_{1}\right) \cap B_{M}\left(\mathscr{H}_{2}\right)\right\}=\infty$ then $\#\left\{\mathscr{H}_{1} \cap \mathscr{H}_{2}\right\}=\infty$.

The Lemma is equivalent to the statement: if $\#\left\{\mathscr{H}_{1} \cap \mathscr{H}_{2}\right\}<\infty$ then the set $B_{M}\left(\mathscr{H}_{1}\right) \cap B_{M}\left(\mathscr{H}_{2}\right)$ is finite for every non-negative $M$.

Proof Assume that $\#\left\{B_{M}\left(\mathscr{H}_{1}\right) \cap B_{M}\left(\mathscr{H}_{2}\right)\right\}=\infty$ for some $M \geq 0$, then there exist infinite sequences of elements $\left\{h_{1 i}\right\} \subset \mathscr{H}_{1}$ and $\left\{h_{2 i}\right\} \subset \mathscr{H}_{2}$ such that $\left|h_{1 i}^{-1} h_{2 i}\right|=\left|h_{1 i}-h_{2 i}\right| \leq 2 M$ for every $i \in \mathbb{N}$. We denote the element $h_{1 i}^{-1} h_{2 i}$ by $l_{i}$. Since $\left|l_{i}\right| \leq 2 M$ and the geometry of $\operatorname{Cay}(G)$ is proper, there exists an element $l \in G$ and a subsequence $\left\{i_{j}\right\}, j \in \mathbb{N}$ such that $l_{i_{j_{1}}}=l_{i_{j_{2}}}=l$ in $G$ for any $j_{1}, j_{2} \in \mathbb{N}$ and thus $h_{1 s}^{-1} h_{2 s}=h_{1 k}^{-1} h_{2 k}$ in $G$ for every $s, k \in\left\{i_{j}\right\}$. We obtained that $h_{1 k} h_{1 s}^{-1}=h_{2 k} h_{2 s}^{-1}$ belongs to $\mathscr{H}_{1} \cap \mathscr{H}_{2}$ for every $s, k \in\left\{i_{j}\right\}$. For every fixed $k, \lim _{s \rightarrow \infty}\left|h_{1 k} h_{1 s}^{-1}\right| \geq\left(\lim _{s \rightarrow \infty}\left|h_{1 s}^{-1}\right|\right)-\left|h_{1 k}\right|=\infty$ which implies that the intersection $\mathscr{H}_{1} \cap \mathscr{H}_{2}$ does not belong to a ball $B_{R}$ for any $R \geq 0$ and thus is infinite.

Corollary IV.2.3. Let $\mathscr{H}$ be a K-quasiconvex subgroup and assume that for infinitely many distinct natural numbers $s_{i}$ and some $z_{1}, z_{2} \in G$ the elements $z_{1} x^{s_{i}} z_{2}$ belong to $\mathscr{H}$. Then there exists $n \neq 0$ such that $z_{1} x^{n} z_{1}^{-1} \in$ $\mathscr{H}$.

Proof We denote $\left|z_{1}\right|+\left|z_{2}\right|$ by $C$. We have that $z_{1} x^{s_{i}} z_{1}^{-1}\left(z_{1} z_{2}\right) \in \mathscr{H}$ and hence the distance $d\left(z_{1} x^{s_{i}} z_{1}^{-1}, \mathscr{H}\right)$ is bounded by $C$ for infinitely many distinct $s_{i}$. In other words the intersection $\left\langle z_{1} x z_{1}^{-1}\right\rangle \cap B_{C}(\mathscr{H})$ is infinite and by Lemma IV.2.2 the intersection $\left\langle z_{1} x z_{1}^{-1}\right\rangle \cap \mathscr{H}$ is also infinite.

Lemma IV.2.4. Let $\mathscr{H}$ be a $K$-quasiconvex subgroup in a $\delta$-hyperbolic group $G$ and let $E$ be an infinite elementary subgroup in $G$. Then the following assertions are equivalent:
(i) for any number $M>0$ we have $E \not \subset B_{M}(\mathscr{H})$;
(ii) $\#\{E \cap \mathscr{H}\}<\infty$;
(iii) There exists $M>0$ (depending on $E$ and $\mathscr{H}$ only) such that $(x, h)<M$ for any $x \in E, h \in \mathscr{H}$.

Proof We first show that (ii) implies (i). If the intersection $E \cap \mathscr{H}$ is finite then, by Lemma IV.2.2, we have $\#\left\{B_{M}(E) \cap B_{M}(\mathscr{H})\right\}<\infty$ for any $M \geq 0$. In particular, $\#\left\{E \cap B_{M}(\mathscr{H})\right\}<\infty$ and hence $E \not \subset B_{M}(\mathscr{H})$ for any $M \geq 0$.

Now we show that (iii) implies (ii). Let $x$ be an element of $E$ and $|x|>2 M$. We have

$$
|x-h|=|x|+|h|-2(x, h) \geq|x|-2 M>0,
$$

hence $x \notin \mathscr{H}$ and so the intersection $E \cap \mathscr{H}$ belongs to the ball $B_{2 M}(e)$ which is a finite set.
It remains to show that (i) implies (iii). Since $E$ is infinite virtually cyclic we can choose an element $x$ in $E$ of infinite order and thus $E$ is of finite index in $E(x)$. Hence

$$
\begin{equation*}
\text { there exists a constant } M_{0} \text { such that } E(x) \subset B_{M_{0}}(\langle x\rangle) \text {. } \tag{IV.7}
\end{equation*}
$$

Let $K_{x}=K(\langle x\rangle)$ be a constant provided by Lemma II.2.6(iii).
Assume (iii) does not hold, i.e. for every $M \geq 0$ there exist $y \in E, h \in \mathscr{H}$, satisfying $(y, h)>M+M_{0}$. Then, by (IV.7), $y=x^{t} a$ for some $a \in E,|a| \leq M_{0}, t \neq 0$ and

$$
\begin{equation*}
\left(x^{t}, h\right) \geq\left(x^{t} a, h\right)-M_{0}>M+M_{0}-M_{0}=M \tag{IV.8}
\end{equation*}
$$

Hence for every $M>0$ there exists an integer $t$ and an element $h \in \mathscr{H}$ such that $\left(x^{t}, h\right)>M$.
Now we fix an arbitrary $t$ and choose $M$ so that $\left|x^{t}\right|<M-K_{x}-5 \delta$. We may assume without loss of generality that $t \geq 0$. Then by (IV.8), there exist $t^{\prime} \geq t$ and $h \in \mathscr{H}$ such that $\left(x^{t^{\prime}}, h\right)>M$. By Lemma II.2.6(ii), vertices $x^{m}$ are within $K_{x}$-neighborhood of $\left[e, x^{t^{\prime}}\right]$ for any $0 \leq m \leq t^{\prime}$. In particular, there exists a vertex $b \in\left[e, x^{t^{\prime}}\right]$ such that $\left|x^{t}-b\right| \leq K_{x}$ and thus $|b| \leq M-5 \delta<\left(x^{t^{t}}, h\right)-5 \delta$. By Lemma IV.2.1(iii), we have that $b \in B_{4 \delta}([e, h])$ and, because $\mathscr{H}$ is $K$-quasiconvex, $b \in B_{4 \delta+K}(\mathscr{H})$. Finally, we get that $x^{t}$ belongs to $B_{4 \delta+K+K_{x}}(\mathscr{H})$ for every $t$ contrary to (i).

In Lemma IV.2.5 and Theorem IV.2.8 we follow in part the line of argument from [Arzh] (in particular we apply Lemma 13[Arzh]).

Lemma IV.2.5. Let $x$ be an element of infinite order in $G$ and choose a constant $M_{1} \geq 0$. Then there exist a natural number $m$ and a number $M_{2} \geq 0$ such that for any element $h$ in $G$ satisfying conditions $|h|<2 M_{1}$ and $h \notin E(x)$ and any $|t|,|s| \geq m$ the following inequality holds:

$$
\left|x^{t} h x^{s}\right| \geq\left|x^{t}\right|+|h|+\left|x^{s}\right|-M_{2}
$$

Proof For a pair of integers $s, t$ we consider a closed path $p_{1} q_{1} p_{2} q_{2}$ in $\operatorname{Cay}(G)$, where the path $p_{1}$ starts from $e$ and $\operatorname{lab}\left(p_{1}\right)=x^{-t}$, the path $q_{1}$ is geodesic and ends at vertex $h x^{s}$, the path $p_{2}$ satisfies $l a b\left(p_{2}\right)=x^{-s}$ and $q_{2}$ is geodesic with $\operatorname{lab}\left(q_{2}\right)=h^{-1}$. We define phase vertices $a_{i}$ on $p_{1}$ and phase vertices $b_{j}$ on $p_{2}^{-1}$ relative to the natural factorizations $x^{-t}$ and $x^{s}$ respectively $(i=0, \ldots,-t$ and $j=0, \ldots, s)$.

Step 1. We take constants $\lambda, c, K_{x}=K(\langle x\rangle)$ provided by Lemma II. 2.6 for the cyclic group $\langle x\rangle$ and define

$$
C=\max \left\{2 K_{x}+\frac{1}{2}|x|, K_{x}+2 M_{1}\right\}+8 \delta
$$

Let us denote by $y_{i}$ a phase path connecting vertex $a_{i}$ with some phase vertex $b_{j}$ of $p_{2}$. Assume that $\left|y_{i}\right| \leq C$ for some $i$. We define subpaths $p_{1}^{\prime}, p_{2}^{\prime}$ of paths $p_{1}, p_{2}$, where the path $p_{1}^{\prime}$ connects $a_{0}$ to $a_{i}$ and $p_{2}^{\prime}$ connects $b_{j}$ to $b_{0}$. Considering the closed path $p_{1}^{\prime} y_{i} p_{2}^{\prime} q_{2}$, we have

$$
|j||x| \geq\left|h-h x^{j}\right| \geq\left|x^{i}\right|-|h|-\left|y_{i}\right| \geq \lambda|x||i|-c-2 M_{1}-C,
$$

which implies that $|j| \geq \frac{\lambda|i||x|-c-C-2 M_{1}}{|x|} \geq \lambda|i|-c_{1}$, where $c_{1}=\frac{c+C+2 M_{1}}{|x|}$.
Since we have fixed the constant $C$, we may apply Lemma II. 2.10 to the closed path $p_{1}^{\prime} y_{i} p_{2}^{\prime} q_{2}$ to obtain an integer $m_{0}$ such that if we choose a number $i_{0}$ satisfying $\lambda\left|i_{0}\right|-c_{1} \geq m_{0}$ and hence $\left|i_{0}\right| \geq m_{0}$ then there exists a phase path $y_{i^{\prime}},\left|i^{\prime}\right| \leq i_{0}$ such that $\operatorname{lab}\left(y_{i^{\prime}}\right) \in E(x)$. If the vertex $b_{j^{\prime}}$ is the end vertex of $y_{i^{\prime}}$, we get that $x^{-i^{\prime}} l a b\left(y_{i^{\prime}}\right) x^{-j^{\prime}} h=e$ in $G$ and hence $h \in E(x)$, contradiction. We obtained that there exists $i_{0}$ depending on

Figure IV.1: Step I of IV.2.5

$x$ and $C$, such that

$$
\begin{equation*}
\left|y_{i_{0}}\right|>C . \tag{IV.9}
\end{equation*}
$$

Step 2. We show now that $a_{i_{0}} \in B_{8 \delta+K_{x}}\left(q_{1}\right)$. By Lemma II.2.6, $a_{i} \in B_{K_{x}}\left(\left[e, x^{-t}\right]\right)$ and using twice the condition (H2), we get that $a_{i_{0}}$ belongs to $B_{8 \delta+K_{x}}\left(q_{2} \cup\left[h, h x^{s}\right] \cup q_{1}\right)$.

Clearly $a_{i_{0}} \notin B_{8 \delta+K_{x}}\left(q_{2}\right)$ : since $\left|y_{i_{0}}\right|$ is minimal, i.e. $\left|y_{i_{0}}\right| \leq\left|a_{i_{0}}-b_{j^{\prime}}\right|$ for every $j=0, \ldots, s$, we get for $j^{\prime}=0$ that

$$
\left|y_{i_{0}}\right| \leq\left|a_{i_{0}}-b_{0}\right|=\left|a_{i_{0}}-h\right| \leq d\left(a_{i_{0}}, q_{2}\right)+\left|q_{2}\right| \leq 8 \delta+K_{x}+|h|<C
$$

contrary to (IV.9).
Similarly, $a_{i_{0}} \notin B_{8 \delta+K_{x}}\left(\left[h, h x^{s}\right]\right)$. Otherwise we may consider a vertex $z$ on $\left[h, h x^{s}\right]$ at distance at most $8 \delta+K_{x}$ from $a_{i_{0}}$ and choose a vertex $z^{\prime}$ on $p_{2}$ at distance no more than $K_{x}$ from $z$. Finally, there exists a phase vertex $b_{j^{\prime}}$ on $p_{2}$ such that $\left|b_{j^{\prime}}-z^{\prime}\right| \leq|x| / 2$. Using the minimality of $\left|y_{i_{0}}\right|$ we obtain the estimate for the length of phase path:

$$
\left|y_{i_{0}}\right| \leq\left|a_{i_{0}}-z\right|+\left|z-z^{\prime}\right|+\left|z^{\prime}-b_{j^{\prime}}\right| \leq\left(K_{x}+8 \delta\right)+K_{x}+|x| / 2 \leq C,
$$

which again contradicts (IV.9). The claim of Step 2 is proved.
Step 3. Let us choose some $|t|,|s| \geq\left|i_{0}\right|$. We choose $z$ on $\left[e, x^{-t}\right]$ such that

$$
\begin{equation*}
\left|a_{i_{0}}-z\right| \leq K_{x} . \tag{IV.10}
\end{equation*}
$$

By Step 2, the vertex $a_{i_{0}}$ is in the set $B_{8 \delta+K_{x}}\left(q_{1}\right)$ and hence $z \in B_{8 \delta+2 K_{x}}\left(q_{1}\right)$. Applying Lemma IV.2.1 (ii) to vertices $e, x^{-t}, h x^{s}, z$ we get using (IV.5), $|h|<2 M_{1}$ :

$$
\left|q_{1}\right| \geq\left|x^{t}\right|+\left|h x^{s}\right|-2|z|-2 \delta-2\left(8 \delta+2 K_{x}\right) \geq\left|x^{t}\right|+\left(|h|+\left|x^{s}\right|-4 M_{1}\right)-2|z|-2 \delta-2\left(8 \delta+2 K_{x}\right) .
$$

Inequality (IV.10) implies that $\left|x^{i_{0}}\right|+K_{x} \geq|z|$ and we conclude that

$$
\left|q_{1}\right| \geq\left|x^{t}\right|+|h|+\left|x^{s}\right|-2\left(\left|x^{i_{0}}\right|+K_{x}\right)+2\left(9 \delta+2 K_{x}\right)=\left|x^{t}\right|+|h|+\left|x^{s}\right|-\left(4 M_{1}+2\left|x^{i_{0}}\right|+6 K_{x}+18 \delta\right) .
$$

It remains to define the constant $M_{2}$ (depending only on $\langle x\rangle, M_{1}, \mathscr{H}$ ) to be $4 M_{1}+2\left|x^{i_{0}}\right|+4 K_{x}+18 \delta$ and define $m=\left|i_{0}\right|$.

Lemma IV.2.6. ([Arzh], Lemma 13) Let $n \geq 1, r_{0} \geq 48 \delta$ and elements $h_{i}, g_{i} \in G(1 \leq i \leq n)$ satisfy :

$$
\begin{gather*}
\left|g_{i}\right|>15 r_{0},(1 \leq i \leq n),\left|h_{1} g_{1}\right| \geq\left|h_{1}\right|+\left|g_{1}\right|-r_{0},  \tag{IV.11}\\
\left|g_{i-1} h_{i} g_{i}\right| \geq\left|g_{i-1}\right|+\left|h_{i}\right|+\left|g_{i}\right|-2 r_{0}(1<i \leq n) . \tag{IV.12}
\end{gather*}
$$

Then the following assertions are true:
(i) One has

$$
\left|h_{1} g_{1} \ldots h_{n} g_{n}\right| \geq\left|h_{1} g_{1} \ldots h_{n-1} g_{n-1}\right|+\left|h_{n}\right|+\left|g_{n}\right|-5 r_{0} .
$$

In particular one has (by induction) $h_{1} g_{1} \ldots h_{n} g_{n} \neq e$ in $G$.
(ii) Let $p$ be a path in $\operatorname{Cay}(G)$ labeled by $h_{1} g_{1} \ldots h_{n} g_{n}$. Then the path $p$ and any geodesic $\left[p_{-}, p_{+}\right]$are contained within $4 r_{0}$-neighborhood of each other.

For technical reasons we introduce a the following corollary (related to the Lemma quoted above).
Corollary IV.2.7. Let $\mathscr{H}$ be a quasiconvex subgroup of infinite index and $r_{0} \geq 0$ be a constant. Assume that for every $r \geq r_{0}$ there exists a finite set $\mathscr{F}=\mathscr{F}(r)$ of elements of $G$ such that the number $\#\{\mathscr{F}\}$ is independent of $r$ and:

$$
\text { (A0) } \mathscr{F} \cap \mathscr{F}^{-1}=\emptyset .
$$

Moreover, for every $f_{1}, f_{2} \in \mathscr{F}^{ \pm 1}$ and $h \in \mathscr{H}$ :
(A1) $\left|f_{1}\right|>15 r$;
(A2) $\quad\left|h f_{1}\right| \geq|h|+\left|f_{1}\right|-r_{0} ;$
(A3) $\left|f_{1} h f_{2}\right| \geq\left|f_{1}\right|+|h|+\left|f_{2}\right|-2 r_{0}$, unless $h=e$ and $f_{1}=f_{2}^{-1}$.
Then (i) the conclusion of previous Lemma holds for every path labeled by $h_{1} f_{1} \ldots h_{n} f_{n}$ unless there exists $i$ such that $h_{i}=e$ and $f_{i-1}=f_{i}^{-1}$, where $f_{1}, \ldots, f_{n} \in \mathscr{F}^{ \pm 1}$;
(ii) the group $H_{1}=\langle\mathscr{H}, \mathscr{F}\rangle$ is isomorphic to $\mathscr{H} *\left(*_{g \in \mathscr{F}}<g>\right)$ and is $\left(4 \delta+4 r+\max \left\{K, \max _{g \in \mathscr{F}}|g| / 2\right\}\right)$ quasiconvex in $G$.

Proof (i) Follows immediately from the above Lemma IV.2.6.
(ii) If the equality $h_{1} f_{1} \ldots h_{n} f_{n}=e$ holds in $G$ (where $f_{i} \in \mathscr{F}, n \geq i \geq 1$ ) then there exists an index $i \leq n$ such that $h_{i}=e$ for some and $f_{i-1}=f_{i}^{-1}$ and exactly one of the elements $f_{i-1}, f_{i}^{-1}$ belongs to $\mathscr{F}$. Thus the group generated by $\mathscr{H}$ and $f_{1}, \ldots, f_{n}$ is isomorphic to $\mathscr{H} *\left\langle f_{1}\right\rangle * \ldots *\left\langle f_{n}\right\rangle$.

Consider an element $h=h_{1} f_{1} \ldots h_{n} f_{n} h_{n+1}$ in $G$, where $f_{1}, \ldots, f_{n} \in \mathscr{F}$ and if $h_{i}=e$ for $i \leq n$ then $f_{i-1} f_{i} \neq e$ ( $h_{n+1}$ can be the identity $e$ ). Define a path $p p^{\prime}$ in $\operatorname{Cay}(G)$ where the subpath $p$ starts from $e$ and is labelled by $h_{1} f_{1} \ldots h_{n} f_{n}$ in $\operatorname{Cay}(G)$ and the path $p^{\prime}$ labeled by $h_{n+1}$. By (H2) and Lemma IV.2.6(ii), we have that $\left[e, p_{+}^{\prime}\right] \subset$ $B_{4 \delta+4 r_{0}}\left(p \cup p^{\prime}\right)$. In turn, every vertex $v$ of $p \cup p^{\prime}$ is either within $K$-neighborhood of $\mathscr{H}_{1}=\left\langle\mathscr{H}, f_{1}, \ldots, f_{n}\right\rangle$ (if $v$ is a vertex of a subpath labeled by $h_{i}$ ) or at most $\max _{g \in \mathscr{F}(r)}|g| / 2$ away from $\left\langle\mathscr{H}, f_{1}, \ldots, f_{n}\right\rangle$ (if $v$ is a vertex of the subpath labeled by $f_{i}$ ). We conclude that every vertex $z \in\left[e, p_{+}^{\prime}\right]$ is within $4 \delta+4 r+$ $\max \left\{K, \max \left\{K, \max _{g \in \mathscr{F}(r)}|g| / 2\right\}\right.$ from a vertex in $\mathscr{H}_{1}$. Hence $\mathscr{H}_{1}$ is $(4 \delta+4 r+\max \{K, \max \{K, \max \operatorname{ma\mathscr {F}}(r)|g| / 2\})$ quasiconvex.

Theorem IV.2.8. Let $G$ be a non-elementary hyperbolic group and $\mathscr{H}$ be a $K$-quasiconvex subgroup of $G$. Consider an element $x$ in $G$ of infinite order such that $E(x) \cap \mathscr{H}=\{e\}$. Then there exists a number $r_{0}$ (depending on $\mathscr{H}$ and $x$ only) such that
(i) $\left(x^{s}, h\right)<\frac{r_{0}}{2}$ for any $h \in H$ and $s \in \mathbb{Z}$ and
(ii) for any $r \geq r_{0}$ there exists $t^{\prime}>0$ such that for every $t \geq t^{\prime}$ and $g=x^{t}$ the subgroup $\mathscr{H}_{1}=\langle g, \mathscr{H}\rangle$ is $(4 \delta+4 r+\max \{K,|g| / 2\})$-quasiconvex, of infinite index and canonically isomorphic to $\langle g\rangle * \mathscr{H}$. Moreover, the inequalities of Lemma IV.2.6 hold for $r ; f_{i} \in\langle g\rangle \backslash\{e\}$ and $h_{i} \in \mathscr{H}$.

Proof By Lemma IV.2.4(iii), there exists $M>0$ such that $\left(x^{s}, h\right)<M$ for any $h \in H$ and $s \in \mathbb{Z}$, hence

$$
\begin{equation*}
\left|h x^{s}\right|=|h|+\left|x^{s}\right|-2\left(x^{s}, h\right) \geq|h|+\left|x^{s}\right|-2 M \tag{IV.13}
\end{equation*}
$$

Now we consider an arbitrary element $x^{m_{1}} h x^{m_{2}}$. If $|h|>2 M+\delta$, then apply Lemma IV.2.1(i) to vertices $e, x^{m_{1}}, x^{m_{1}} h, x^{m_{1}} h x^{m_{2}}$ in $\operatorname{Cay}(G)$ :

$$
\begin{equation*}
\left|x^{m_{1}} h x^{m_{2}}\right| \geq\left|x^{m_{1}}\right|+|h|+\left|x^{m_{2}}\right|-4 M-2 \delta \tag{IV.14}
\end{equation*}
$$

Lemma II.2.6(iv) provides a constant $M^{\prime} \geq 0$ such that the following inequality holds provided $m_{1} m_{2} \geq 0$ :

$$
\begin{equation*}
\left|x^{m_{1}} x^{m_{2}}\right| \geq\left|x^{m_{1}}\right|+\left|x^{m_{2}}\right|-2 M^{\prime} \tag{IV.15}
\end{equation*}
$$

By Lemma IV.2.5, there exist a natural number $m$ and a non-negative constant $M_{2}$ such that for any $\left|m_{1}\right|,\left|m_{2}\right| \geq$ $m$ the following inequality holds:

$$
\begin{equation*}
\left|x^{m_{1}} h x^{m_{2}}\right| \geq\left|x^{m_{1}}\right|+|h|+\left|x^{m_{2}}\right|-M_{2} \tag{IV.16}
\end{equation*}
$$

for every $h \neq 1,|h|<2 M+2 \delta$. Now we choose

$$
\begin{equation*}
r_{0}=\max \left\{2 M+\delta, M_{2} / 2,48 \delta, M^{\prime}\right\} \tag{IV.17}
\end{equation*}
$$

and then for any $r \geq r_{0}$ we choose $t^{\prime}$ satisfying $\left|t^{\prime}\right| \geq m$ so that the inequality

$$
\begin{equation*}
\left|x^{t}\right|>15 r, \text { holds for every } t,|t| \geq\left|t^{\prime}\right| \tag{IV.18}
\end{equation*}
$$

Note that the choice of $r_{0}$ in (IV.17) and inequality (IV.13) proves part (i) of our Theorem.
We can observe now that the corollary IV.2.7 holds for $\mathscr{H}, r_{0}, r, \mathscr{F}(r)=\left\{x^{t}\right\}$. The condition (A0) is immediate, condition (A1) holds by the choice of $t,(A 2)$ is satisfied by (IV.13) and (A3) is justified because (IV.14)-(IV.16) hold.

Thus the group generated by $\mathscr{H}$ and $g$ is isomorphic to $\mathscr{H} *\langle g\rangle$ and the group $\mathscr{H}_{1}=\mathscr{H} *\langle g\rangle$ is $(4 \delta+4 r+\max \{K,|g| / 2\})$-quasiconvex. All conclusions of the Theorem are checked for $\mathscr{H}_{1}$ except the infiniteness of index. It only remains to observe that the subgroup $\mathscr{H}_{2}=\left\langle\mathscr{H}, g^{2}\right\rangle$ has infinite index in $\langle\mathscr{H}, g\rangle$ and hence in $G$. It satisfies the all of the conditions of the Theorem and hence the conclusion holds for the same constant $r$ and $g=x^{2 t}$.

Let us consider a path $p$ in $\operatorname{Cay}(G)$ starting at vertex $a$ and ending with $b$ with label $h_{1} f_{1} \ldots h_{n} f_{n} h_{n}$, i.e. $a h_{1} f_{1} \ldots h_{n} f_{n} h_{n}=b$ in $G$, where $f_{i} \in \mathscr{F}^{ \pm 1}(r), h_{i} \in \mathscr{H}$ and if $h_{i}=e$ for $1<i \leq n$ then $f_{i-1} f_{i} \neq e$. We shall denote:

$$
\begin{array}{cc}
a_{0}=a, & b_{1}=a h_{1} \\
a_{i}=a h_{1} \ldots h_{i} f_{i} \text { for } 1<i \leq n, \quad b_{i}=a h_{1} f_{1} \ldots h_{i}, \text { for } 1<i \leq n . \tag{IV.19}
\end{array}
$$

Lemma IV.2.9. Assume that $\mathscr{H}, r_{0}$ and a set $\mathscr{F}(r)$ (where $r \geq r_{0}$ ) satisfy the corollary IV.2.7. In the notations (IV.19) we have that $\left(a, b_{i+1}\right)_{a_{i}} \leq \frac{r_{0}}{2}+\delta$ for any $i \geq 1$.

Proof The definition (H3) for $a, b_{i}, a_{i}, b_{i+1}$ reads:

$$
\begin{equation*}
\left|a_{i}-a\right|+\left|f_{i} h_{i+1}\right| \leq \max \left\{\left|b_{i}-a\right|+\left|h_{i+1}\right|,\left|b_{i+1}-a\right|+\left|f_{i}\right|\right\}+2 \delta . \tag{IV.20}
\end{equation*}
$$

The corollary IV.2.7 permits us to apply the inequalities of Lemma IV.2.6(i) and (A2) to the left side of (IV.20):

$$
\left|a_{i}-a\right|+\left|f_{i} h_{i+1}\right| \geq\left(\left|a_{i-1}-a\right|+\left|h_{i}\right|+\left|f_{i}\right|-5 r_{0}\right)+\left(\left|f_{i}\right|+\left|h_{i+1}\right|-r_{0}\right),
$$

applying (A1) we obtain

$$
\left|a_{i}-a\right|+\left|f_{i} h_{i+1}\right| \geq\left(\left|a_{i-1}-a\right|+\left|h_{i}\right|\right)+\left|h_{i+1}\right|+\left(2\left|f_{i}\right|-6 r_{0}\right)>\left|b_{i}-a\right|+\left|h_{i+1}\right|+24 r_{0} .
$$

$\operatorname{By}(A 2)$ and the conditions on $r_{0}$ in Lemma IV.2.6:

$$
\begin{equation*}
\left|a_{i}-a\right|+\left|f_{i} h_{i+1}\right|>\left|b_{i}-a\right|+\left|h_{i+1}\right|+24 r_{0}>\left|b_{i}-a\right|+\left|h_{i+1}\right|+2 \delta . \tag{IV.21}
\end{equation*}
$$

Hence we may rewrite (IV.21) as

$$
\left|a_{i}-a\right|+\left|f_{i} h_{i+1}\right| \leq\left|b_{i+1}-a\right|+\left|f_{i}\right|+2 \delta
$$

and thus (using (A2) again):

$$
\left|b_{i+1}-a\right| \geq\left|a_{i}-a\right|+\left|f_{i} h_{i+1}\right|-\left|f_{i}\right|-2 \delta \geq\left|a_{i}-a\right|+\left|f_{i}\right|+\left|h_{i+1}\right|-r_{0}-\left|f_{i}\right|-2 \delta=
$$

$=\left|a_{i}-a\right|+\left|h_{i+1}\right|-2 \delta-r_{0}$, which, by (H1), implies that $\left(a, b_{i+1}\right)_{a_{i}} \leq \frac{r_{0}}{2}+\delta . \square$

Lemma IV.2.10. Assume that $\mathscr{H}, r_{0}$ and a set $\mathscr{F}(r)$ (where $\left.r \geq r_{0}\right)$ satisfy the corollary IV.2.7. In the conventions above (see (IV.19)), assume that
(i) $a_{i} \in B_{R}$ for some $i>1$. Then $a_{1}$ belongs to $B_{R+2 \delta-2 r}$.
(ii) $b_{i+1} \in B_{R}$ for some $i>1$. Then $a_{1}$ belongs to $B_{R}$.

Proof (i) By Lemma IV.2.6(ii), there exists $b^{\prime} \in\left[a, a_{i}\right]$ such that

$$
\begin{equation*}
\left|b^{\prime}-a_{1}\right| \leq 4 r_{0} . \tag{IV.22}
\end{equation*}
$$

Using inequalities (A2) and (A1) of corollary IV.2.7, we have

$$
\begin{equation*}
\left|b^{\prime}-a\right| \geq\left|a-a_{1}\right|-\left|b^{\prime}-a_{1}\right| \geq\left|f_{1}\right|+\left|h_{1}\right|-r_{0}-4 r_{0} \geq 10 r . \tag{IV.23}
\end{equation*}
$$

Similarly, we may inductively apply Lemma IV.2.6(i) to the subpath of $p$ connecting $a_{j}, a_{i}$ for $j<i$ :

$$
\begin{equation*}
\left|a_{j}-a_{i}\right| \geq\left|a_{j}-a_{i-1}\right|+\left|h_{i}\right|+\left|f_{i}\right|-5 r_{0}>\left|a_{j}-a_{i-1}\right|+15 r-5 r_{0} \geq 10 r(i-j), \tag{IV.24}
\end{equation*}
$$

and apply it in order to estimate (for $i>1$ ):

$$
\left|b^{\prime}-a_{i}\right| \geq\left|a_{1}-a_{i}\right|-\left|a_{1}-b^{\prime}\right| \geq 10 r(i-1)-4 r_{0} \geq 6 r
$$

The inequalities (IV.23) and (IV.24) allow to apply Lemma IV.2.1(iv) to $a, a_{i}, e, b^{\prime}$ (with $D=6 r$ ) and get that $\left|b^{\prime}-e\right| \leq \max \left\{|a-e|,\left|a_{i}-e\right|\right\}+2 \delta-6 r$. Since $a, a_{i} \in B_{R}$ we have that $\left|b^{\prime}-e\right| \leq R+2 \delta-6 r$. We use the previous inequality together with (IV.22) to conclude that: $\left|a_{1}-e\right| \leq\left|a_{1}-b^{\prime}\right|+\left|b^{\prime}-e\right| \leq 4 r_{0}+R-$ $6 r+2 \delta \leq R+2 \delta-2 r$.
(ii) The inequality (IV.24) provides that $\left|a_{i}-a\right| \geq 10 r>\frac{r_{0}}{2}+6 \delta+1$; on the other hand Lemma IV.2.9 implies that $\frac{r_{0}}{2}+6 \delta+1 \geq\left(a, b_{i+1}\right)_{a_{i}}+5 \delta+1$. Thus we can choose a vertex $d$ on a geodesic $\left[a, a_{i}\right]$ satisfying inequalities:

$$
\left(a, b_{i+1}\right)_{a_{i}}+5 \delta+1 \geq\left|d-a_{i}\right| \geq\left(a, b_{i+1}\right)_{a_{i}}+5 \delta .
$$

Then, by Lemma IV.2.1(iii), $d$ belongs to $B_{4 \delta}\left(\left[a, b_{i+1}\right]\right)$ and using Lemma IV.2.9 we get

$$
d\left(a_{i},\left[a, b_{i+1}\right]\right) \leq|d-b|+4 \delta \leq\left(a, b_{i+1}\right)_{a_{i}}+5 \delta+1+4 \delta \leq \frac{r_{0}}{2}+10 \delta+1 .
$$

By (H2), segment $\left[a, b_{i+1}\right]$ belongs to the $4 \delta$-neighborhood of union $[e, a] \cup\left[e, b_{i+1}\right]$ which is a subset of $B_{R}$ because $a, b_{i+1} \in B_{R}$. Hence

$$
\left|a_{i}-e\right| \leq d\left(a_{i},\left[a, b_{i+1}\right]\right)+4 \delta+R \leq R+\frac{r_{0}}{2}+14 \delta+1
$$

and, by part (i) of this Lemma, we conclude that $a_{1}$ belongs to $B_{R-r+16 \delta+1} \subset B_{R}$.
Lemma IV.2.11. Let $\mathscr{H}$ be a $K$-quasiconvex subgroup in a hyperbolic group $G$. Take some $a \in B_{R}$ and $h \in \mathscr{H}$ such that ah $\notin B_{R}$. Then either $\left(a^{-1}, h\right) \leq 13 \delta+K$ or there exists $b_{1} \in a \mathscr{H} \cap B_{R}$ such that $b_{1} h_{1}=a h$ and $\left|h_{1}\right|<|h|$ for some $h_{1} \in \mathscr{H}$.

Proof Assume that $\left(a^{-1}, h\right)>13 \delta+K$. We choose a vertex $d$ on the segment $[a, a h]$ such that $|d-a|=$ $K+8 \delta$. By Lemma IV.2.1(iii), $d \in B_{4 \delta}([e, a])$ and we can choose $d^{\prime} \in[e, a]$ to satisfy the inequality $\left|d-d^{\prime}\right| \leq$ $4 \delta$. Then we have

$$
\begin{gathered}
|d-e| \leq\left|e-d^{\prime}\right|+\left|d-d^{\prime}\right| \leq\left(|e-a|-\left|a-d^{\prime}\right|\right)+4 \delta \leq R-\left|a-d^{\prime}\right|+4 \delta \leq \\
\leq R-|a-d|+4 \delta+4 \delta \leq R-K .
\end{gathered}
$$

By quasiconvexity of $\mathscr{H}$, there exists $b_{1} \in a \mathscr{H},\left|b_{1}-d\right| \leq K$ and hence $b_{1} \in B_{R}$. By the choice of $b_{1}$, we have that $b_{1}^{-1} a h=h_{1} \in \mathscr{H}$ and

$$
\left|b_{1}-a h\right| \leq\left|b_{1}-d\right|+|d-a h| \leq\left|b_{1}-d\right|+(|a-a h|-|d-a|) \leq K+(|h|-K-8 \delta)<|h| .
$$

Lemma IV.2.12. Assume that $\mathscr{H}, r_{0}$ and a set $\mathscr{F}(r)$ (where $\left.r \geq r_{0}\right)$ satisfy the corollary IV.2.7. We adopt notations (IV.19) and let $a, b$ be vertices in $B_{R}$ and ah $h_{1} g h_{2}=b$ in $G$ for some $h_{1}, h_{2} \in \mathscr{H}, g \in \mathscr{F}^{ \pm 1}(r)$. Assume furthermore that $\left(a^{-1}, h_{1}\right) \leq 13 \delta+K$ and that $b_{1} \notin B_{R}$. Then

$$
\left|h_{1}\right| \leq K+\frac{r_{0}}{2}+15 \delta .
$$

Proof Definition (H1) and (A2) yield:

$$
\begin{equation*}
\frac{r_{0}}{2} \geq\left(a_{1}, a\right)_{b_{1}} \geq \min \left\{(a, b)_{b_{1}},\left(a_{1}, b\right)_{b_{1}}\right\}-\delta \geq \min \left\{(e, a)_{b_{1}},(e, b)_{b_{1}},\left(a_{1}, b\right)_{b_{1}}\right\}-2 \delta . \tag{IV.25}
\end{equation*}
$$

Consider the last two Gromov products on the right-hand side of (IV.25). We have:

$$
(e, b)_{b_{1}}=\frac{1}{2}\left(\left|b_{1}\right|+\left|b-b_{1}\right|-|b|\right)=\frac{1}{2}\left(\left|b_{1}\right|-|b|\right)+\frac{1}{2}\left|b-b_{1}\right|,
$$

by the conditions of this Lemma, $\left|b_{1}\right|>R \geq|b|$ and using (A1) and (A2) we conclude

$$
(e, b)_{b_{1}} \geq 0+\frac{1}{2}\left(|g|+\left|h_{2}\right|-r_{0}\right) \geq \frac{1}{2}|g|-\frac{r_{0}}{2}>7 r \geq 7 r_{0} .
$$

Similarly,

$$
\left(a_{1}, b\right)_{b_{1}}=\frac{1}{2}\left(|g|+\left|b-b_{1}\right|-\left|h_{2}\right|\right) \geq \frac{1}{2}\left(|g|+\left(|g|+\left|h_{2}\right|-r_{0}\right)-\left|h_{2}\right|\right) \geq|g|-\frac{r_{0}}{2} \geq 14 \frac{1}{2} r_{0} .
$$

Now we may rewrite (IV.25) as $\frac{r_{0}}{2} \geq(e, a)_{b_{1}}-2 \delta$. Note that $\left(e, b_{1}\right)_{a}=\left(a^{-1}, h_{1}\right) \leq 13 \delta+K$ and thus, by definition of the Gromov product (II.1):

$$
\left|h_{1}\right|=(e, a)_{b_{1}}+\left(b_{1}, e\right)_{a} \leq\left(\frac{r_{0}}{2}+2 \boldsymbol{\delta}\right)+(K+13 \boldsymbol{\delta}) .
$$

In the following Lemma, we denote $\langle\mathscr{H}, \mathscr{F}(r)\rangle$ by $\mathscr{H}_{1}$. In order to estimate the number of $\mathscr{H}_{1}$-cosets in the ball $B_{R}$ from below, we define $M_{R}=\left\{a \mathscr{H} \mid a \mathscr{H} \cap B_{R} \neq \emptyset\right\}$ and $Q_{R}=\left\{a \mathscr{H} \in M_{R} \mid \exists b \in B_{R}, b \mathscr{H} \neq\right.$
$\left.a \mathscr{H} \& b \mathscr{H}_{1}=a \mathscr{H}_{1}\right\}$.
Lemma IV.2.13. Assume that $\mathscr{H}, r_{0}$ and a set $\mathscr{F}(r)$ (where $r \geq r_{0}$ ) satisfy the corollary IV.2.7. Then for any $k \in \mathbb{N}$ and all sufficiently large $r$ the following inequality holds: $\frac{\#\left\{Q_{R}\right\}}{\#\left\{B_{R}\right\}} \leq \frac{1}{2^{k}}$ for any $R>0$.

Proof Recall that the number $\#\{\mathscr{F}\}=\#\{\mathscr{F}(r)\}$ is a constant independent of $r$. We use corollary IV.1.3 to choose $c$ so that that $2^{k+1} \#\{\mathscr{F}\}\left(\#\left\{B_{K+r_{0}+15 \delta}\right\}^{2} \#\left\{B_{R-c}\right\}\right) \leq \#\left\{B_{R}\right\}$ and $r$ so that:

$$
\begin{equation*}
r \geq \max \left\{c / 7,2\left(K+\frac{r_{0}}{2}+17 \delta\right)\right\} . \tag{IV.26}
\end{equation*}
$$

Let $a \mathscr{H}$ belong to $Q_{R}$, then there exist $b \in B_{R}, b \notin a \mathscr{H}$, and elements $h_{i} \in \mathscr{H}(i=1, \ldots, k)$ such that $a h_{1} f_{1} \ldots f_{k} h_{k+1}=b$ in $G$, where $f_{i} \in \mathscr{F} \pm 1$. By Lemma IV.2.10, we have that either $b_{1}=a h_{1}$ or $a_{1}=a h_{1} f_{1}$ or $a h_{1} f_{1} h_{2}$ belongs to $B_{R}$. Hence we can assume that $b=a h_{1} g h_{2}$, where $h_{1}, h_{2} \in \mathscr{H}, g \in \mathscr{F}{ }^{ \pm 1}$. Clearly $a \mathscr{H} \neq b \mathscr{H}$, otherwise $a h_{1} g h_{2}=a h$ and $g \in \mathscr{H}$, contradiction.

We may also assume that $a, h_{1}$ are chosen so that $\left|h_{1}\right|$ is minimal with respect to all factorizations $a^{\prime} h^{\prime}=$ $a h_{1}$ in $G$ where $a^{\prime} \in a \mathscr{H} \cap B_{R}$. Similarly, we may assume that $b, h_{2}$ are chosen so that for any $b^{\prime} \in b \mathscr{H} \cap B_{R}$ and $h^{\prime} \in \mathscr{H}$ the equality $b^{\prime} h^{\prime-1}=b h_{2}^{-1}$ implies that $\left|h^{\prime}\right| \geq|h|$. According to the choice we made, if $h_{1} \neq e$ $\left(h_{2} \neq e\right)$ then $b_{1}=a h_{1} \notin B_{R}$ (respectively $a_{1}=a h_{1} g \notin B_{R}$ ). Now we are in position to apply Lemma IV.2.11 to the pairs $a, a h_{1}$ and $b, b h_{2}^{-1}$, which provides that $\left(a^{-1}, h_{1}\right) \leq K+13 \delta,\left(b^{-1}, h_{2}^{-1}\right) \leq K+13 \delta$, and then, by Lemma IV.2.12, we conclude that

$$
\begin{equation*}
\left|h_{i}\right| \leq K+\frac{r_{0}}{2}+15 \delta, \text { for } i=1,2 . \tag{IV.27}
\end{equation*}
$$

If $h_{i}=e$ for $i=1$ or 2 then the corresponding inequality in (IV.27) holds trivially.
We have that $b_{1}, a_{1} \in B_{R+K+\frac{r_{0}}{2}+15 \delta}$. Since $|g|>15 r$, we can fix a factorization $g=g_{1} g_{2}$ in $G$ for every $g \in \mathscr{F}$ such that $\left|g_{1}\right|+\left|g_{2}\right|=|g|$ and $\left|g_{1}\right|,\left|g_{2}\right| \geq \frac{15 r}{2}$. Let $b^{\prime}=a h_{1} g_{1}$ if $g \in \mathscr{F}$ and $b^{\prime}=a h_{1} g_{2}^{-1}$ if $g^{-1} \in \mathscr{F}$, we will call $b^{\prime}$ a middle point of the path $p$ starting at $a$ with label $h_{1} g h_{2}$.

Applying Lemma IV.2.1(iv) to vertices $b_{1}, a_{1}, b^{\prime}$, we obtain that $\left|b^{\prime}-e\right| \leq\left(R+K+\frac{r_{0}}{2}+15 \delta\right)+2 \delta-\frac{15 r}{2}$. As we choose $r$ according to (IV.26) we obtain:

$$
\begin{equation*}
b^{\prime} \in B_{R-7 r} . \tag{IV.28}
\end{equation*}
$$

We have obtained that if a coset $a^{\prime} \mathscr{H}$ belongs to $Q_{R}$ then there exist $a \in a^{\prime} \mathscr{H} \cap B_{R}, b \in B_{R}, h_{1}, h_{2} \in \mathscr{H}$ and $g \in \mathscr{F}^{ \pm 1}$ such that the equation $a h_{1} g h_{2}=b$ holds in $G$ together with conditions (IV.27) and (IV.28). Hence the number of elements in $Q_{R}$ is not greater then the number of paths with label $h_{1} g h_{2}$ in $\operatorname{Cay}(G)$ such that the middle point $b^{\prime}$ of each path satisfies (IV.28):

$$
\begin{equation*}
\#\left\{Q_{R}\right\} \leq \#\left\{\text { of } h_{1} g h_{2} \text { satisfying }(\text { IV. } 27)\right\} \times \#\left\{B_{R-7 r}\right\} \leq 2 \#\{\mathscr{F}\} \#\left\{B_{K+\frac{r_{0}}{2}+15 \delta}\right\}^{2} \times \#\left\{B_{R-7 r}\right\} \tag{IV.29}
\end{equation*}
$$

Due to our choice of $r$ in (IV.26) we finally get

$$
\#\left\{Q_{R}\right\} \leq 2 \#\{\mathscr{F}\} \#\left\{B_{K+\frac{r_{0}}{2}+15 \delta}\right\}^{2} \#\left\{B_{R-7 r}\right\} \leq \frac{1}{2^{k}} \#\left\{B_{R}\right\} .
$$

Corollary IV.2.14. Let $\mathscr{H}$ be a free $K$-quasiconvex subgroup in $G$. Then for any $k \in \mathbb{N}$ and any $x \in G$ of infinite order either:
(i) there exists $t \neq 0$ such that $x^{t} \in \mathscr{H}$, or
(ii)there exists $t$ such that for $g=x^{t}$ the group $\langle\mathscr{H}, g\rangle$ is quasiconvex and canonically isomorphic to the free product $\mathscr{H} *\langle g\rangle$. Moreover $\frac{\#\left\{Q_{R}\right\}}{\#\left\{B_{R}\right\}} \leq \frac{1}{2^{k}}$ for any $R>0$.

Proof Assume that (i) does not hold, so $x^{t} \in \mathscr{H}$ implies $t=0$. By Lemma IV.2.2, we have that for every $M \geq 0$ the number of vertices in $B_{M}(\langle x\rangle) \cap B_{M}(\mathscr{H})$ is finite. There exists $M_{0} \geq 0$ such that $E(x)$ is in $M_{0}$-neighborhood of $\langle x\rangle$, hence $B_{M}(E(x)) \cap B_{M}(\mathscr{H}) \subset B_{M+M_{0}}(\langle x\rangle) \cap B_{M+M_{0}}(\mathscr{H})$ and hence \#\{ $B_{M}(E(x)) \cap$ $\left.B_{M}(\mathscr{H})\right\}$ is finite thus $\#\{E(x) \cap \mathscr{H}\}<\infty$. Since $\mathscr{H}$ is free, the last inequality means that $E(x) \cap \mathscr{H}=\{e\}$. It remains to define $\mathscr{F}(r)=\left\{x^{t}\right\}$ so that $\left|x^{t}\right| \geq 15 r$ and apply the previous Lemma. $\square$

Remark IV.2.15. (i)Let $\mathscr{H}$ be an infinite quasiconvex subgroup of $G$ of infinite index. Then there exists an element $x \in G$ of infinite order such that it is non-commensurable with any element of $\mathscr{H}$.
(ii)Part (i) implies that no infinite index subgroup satisfying the Burnside condition in a non-elementary hyperbolic group is quasiconvex.

Proof (i) Follows from A. Minasyan's Lemma II.2.4 for $K=G$.

Theorem IV.2.16. For every non-elementary $\delta$-hyperbolic group $G$ and any $0<q<1$ there exists a free subgroup H satisfying the Burnside condition and such that $\frac{\#\left\{a H \mid a H \cap B_{R} \neq \emptyset\right\}}{\#\left\{B_{R}\right\}} \geq q$.

Proof We choose a sequence $\left\{k_{i}\right\}_{i \in \mathbb{N}}$ such that

$$
\begin{equation*}
\Sigma_{i=1}^{\infty} \frac{1}{2^{k_{i}}}<1-q \tag{IV.30}
\end{equation*}
$$

Let $\left\{x_{j}\right\}, j \in \mathbb{N}$ be a list of all elements of infinite order in $G$. We fix notations $\mathscr{H}_{i}=\left\langle x_{1}^{t_{1}}, \ldots, x_{i}^{t_{i}}\right\rangle$ for some positive numbers $t_{i} \in \mathbb{N}$ which we will determine later. We define $H=\cup_{i=1}^{\infty} \mathscr{H}_{i}$, it clearly satisfies the Burnside condition. Then we denote $M_{R}^{i}=\left\{a \mathscr{H}_{i} \mid a \mathscr{H}_{i} \cap B_{R} \neq \emptyset\right\}$ and $Q_{R}^{i}=\left\{a \mathscr{H}_{i} \mid \exists b \in B_{R}\right.$ such that $a \mathscr{H}_{i} \neq$ $\left.b \mathscr{H}_{i} \& a \mathscr{H}_{i+1}=b \mathscr{H}_{i+1}\right\}$.

We set $\mathscr{H}_{0}=\{e\}$ and thus $M_{R}^{0}=B_{R}$. Lemma IV.2.14 (applied to $\mathscr{H}_{0}, x_{1}$ and $k_{1}$ ) provides that there exists $t_{1}>0$ such that $\mathscr{H}_{1}=\left\langle f_{1}\right\rangle$ (where $f_{1}=x_{1}^{t_{1}}$ ) is cyclic, quasiconvex and $\frac{\#\left\{Q_{R}^{0}\right\}}{\#\left\{B_{R}\right\}} \leq \frac{1}{2^{k_{1}}}$ for any $R>0$. It provides the following estimate for $M_{R}^{1}$ :

$$
\#\left\{M_{R}^{1}\right\} \geq \#\left\{M_{R}^{0}\right\}-\#\left\{Q_{R}^{0}\right\} \geq\left(1-\frac{1}{2^{k_{1}}}\right) \#\left\{B_{R}\right\}
$$

Now we assume by induction that a free quasiconvex subgroup $\mathscr{H}_{i}=\left\langle x_{1}^{t_{1}}, \ldots, x_{i}^{t_{i}}\right\rangle$ has been constructed by repeated application of Lemma IV.2.14 and $M_{R}^{i}$ satisfies inequality

$$
\begin{equation*}
\#\left\{M_{R}^{i}\right\} \geq\left(1-\frac{1}{2^{k_{1}}}-\frac{1}{2^{k_{2}}}-\ldots-\frac{1}{2^{k_{i}}}\right) \#\left\{B_{R}\right\} \tag{IV.31}
\end{equation*}
$$

If $\left\langle x_{i+1}\right\rangle \subset B_{M}\left(\mathscr{H}_{i}\right)$ for some $M \geq 0$ then, by Lemma IV.2.4, there exists $t_{i+1}>0$ such that $x_{i+1}^{t_{i+1}} \in \mathscr{H}_{i}$ and we can set $\mathscr{H}_{i+1}=\mathscr{H}_{i}$, finishing the induction step $\left(M_{R}^{i+1}=M_{R}^{i}\right)$.

Assume now that $\left\langle x_{i+1}\right\rangle \not \subset B_{M}\left(\mathscr{H}_{i}\right)$ for any non-negative $M$, then, by Lemma IV.2.4, we have \#\{E(x) $\cap$ $\left.\mathscr{H}_{i}\right\}<\infty$ and hence (because $\mathscr{H}_{i}$ is free) $E(x) \cap \mathscr{H}_{i}=\{e\}$. We choose $t_{i+1}$ appplying Lemma IV.2.14 to $\mathscr{H}_{i}, x_{i+1}, k_{i+1}$ and using the induction assumption (IV.31):

$$
\begin{gathered}
\#\left\{M_{R}^{i+1}\right\} \geq \#\left\{M_{R}^{i}\right\}-\#\left\{Q_{R}^{i}\right\} \geq\left(1-\frac{1}{2^{k_{1}}}-\frac{1}{2^{k_{2}}}-\ldots-\frac{1}{2^{k_{i}}}\right) \#\left\{B_{R}\right\}-\#\left\{Q_{R}^{i}\right\} \geq \\
\geq\left(1-\frac{1}{2^{k_{1}}}-\frac{1}{2^{k_{2}}}-\ldots-\frac{1}{2^{k_{i+1}}}\right) \#\left\{B_{R}\right\}
\end{gathered}
$$

and, by (IV.50):

$$
\#\left\{M_{R}\right\} \geq\left(1-\Sigma_{i=1}^{\infty} \frac{1}{2^{k_{i}}}\right) \#\left\{B_{R}\right\}>q \#\left\{B_{R}\right\}
$$

Proof of Theorem IV.1.10 By the remark IV.1.7, the number of left cosets intersecting $B_{n}$ is equal to the number $f_{H \backslash G}(n)$ of right ones. We can now fix some $0<q<1$ and using Theorem IV.2.16 find a group $H$ such that $f_{H \backslash G}(n) \geq q f(n)$. Thus, by remark IV.1.4, the growth of action of $G$ on $H \backslash G$ is maximal.

## IV. 3 Proof of Theorem I.1.8 and corollary I.1.9

The proof of the claim that the element $g$ is $G$-suitable (i.e. $E(g)=\langle g\rangle \times E(G)$ ) in the Lemma below is similar to that in [Olsh93] and to that in Lemma 3.8 in [Min2005], which we will apply. However, we write up the proof completely because the the entire statement does not follow from these considerations.

Lemma IV.3.1. Let $G$ be a non-elementary hyperbolic group and $\mathscr{H}$ be a quasiconvex subgroup of infinite index in $G$. Assume there exists an element $y \in \mathscr{H}$ such that $E(y)=\left\langle y^{\prime}\right\rangle \times E(G)$ for some $y^{\prime} \in G$ and take an element $x \in G$ (it exists by remark IV.2.15) of infinite order which is non-commensurable with any element in $\mathscr{H}$. Then
(i) there exist $k_{1}, k_{2}>0$ such that for every $s>0$ the element $g=y^{k_{1} s} x^{k_{2} s}$ is $G$-suitable and noncommensurable with any element of $\mathscr{H}$;
(ii) for every $C_{0} \geq 0$ there exists $s_{0}>0$ such that for every $s \geq s_{0}$, every $a, b \in B_{C_{0}}$ and every $t \neq 0$ :

$$
a\left(y^{k_{1} s} x^{k_{2} s}\right)^{t} b \notin \mathscr{H}
$$

Proof (i) We define a subgroup $\mathscr{H}_{1}=\langle y\rangle$, which is quasiconvex by Lemma II.2.6(ii). Since $\mathscr{H}_{1} \cap E(x)=$ $\{e\}$, there exists a constant $r_{0} \geq 0$ such that $\left(x^{t}, y^{s}\right)<\frac{r_{0}}{2}$ for all $t, s \in \mathbb{Z}$ by Theorem IV.2.8. By part (ii) of the same Theorem and $r=r_{0}$, there exists $t^{\prime}>0$ such that $\left\langle x^{t^{\prime}}, y\right\rangle \cong\left\langle x^{t^{\prime}}\right\rangle *\langle y\rangle$. We denote $x_{1}=x^{t^{\prime}}$ so the subgroup $\left\langle x_{1}, y\right\rangle$ is free quasiconvex and inequalities of Lemma IV.2.6 hold for $\mathscr{H}_{1}, x_{1}$ and $r=r_{0}$. In particular, for every reduced word $w$ in $\left\langle x_{1}, y\right\rangle$, the corresponding path in $\operatorname{Cay}(G)$ with label $w$ is within $4 r_{0}$-neighborhood of a geodesic connecting its ends.

By Lemma IV.2.4, there exists $M \geq 0$ such that $\left(x^{s}, h\right)<M$ for every $s \in \mathbb{Z}, h \in \mathscr{H}$. Choose $t>0$ such that $\left|x_{1}^{s}\right|>4 r_{0}+K+2 M$ for every $|s| \geq t$ and denote $x_{2}=x_{1}^{t}$. We have that for any non-zero $m$ :

$$
\begin{equation*}
d\left(x_{2}^{m}, h\right) \geq\left|x_{2}^{m}\right|+|h|-2 M \geq\left|x_{2}^{m}\right|-2 M>4 r_{0}+K \tag{IV.32}
\end{equation*}
$$

Figure IV.2: Lemma IV.3.1


Let element $w=y^{s_{0}} x_{2}^{t_{1}} y^{s_{1}} \ldots x_{2}^{t_{n}} y^{s_{n}}$ satisfy $s_{i}, t_{i}, t_{n} \neq 0$ for $i=1, \ldots, n-1$ and assume that $w \in \mathscr{H}$. Then every phase vertex of $w$ is in $\left(4 r_{0}+K\right)$-neighborhood of $\mathscr{H}$, which contradicts inequality (IV.32) because $d\left(y^{s_{0}} x_{2}^{t_{1}}, y^{s_{0}}\right)=d\left(x_{2}^{t_{1}}, e\right)>4 r_{0}+K$. We conclude that an element $w$ of the free group $\mathscr{H}_{2}=\left\langle x_{2}, y\right\rangle$ is commensurable with an element of $\mathscr{H}$ if and only if $w=y^{s}$ for some integer $s$. We have proved the first part of (i): for sufficiently large $k_{1}, k_{2}$ and every $s \neq 0$ the element $y^{k_{1} s} x^{k_{2} s}$ is not commensurable with any element of $\mathscr{H}$.

Now we consider an element $y^{k} x_{2}^{k}$ for sufficiently large $k$ and will show that the group $E\left(y^{k} x_{2}^{k}\right)$ is equal to $\left\langle y^{k} x_{2}^{k}\right\rangle \times E(G)$. Let $z$ be an element of $E\left(y^{k} x_{2}^{k}\right)$, i.e. the equality $z\left(y^{k} x_{2}^{k}\right)^{m} z^{-1}=\left(y^{k} x_{2}^{k}\right)^{m^{\prime}}$ holds in $G$ for some $m= \pm m^{\prime} \neq 0$. We choose a constant

$$
M_{0}>2|z|+8 r_{0}+26 \delta+(3 k+1)\left(\max \left\{|y|,\left|x_{2}\right|\right\}\right)
$$

and a natural number $s$ divisible by $m$ such that $\left|\left(y^{k} x_{2}^{k}\right)^{s}\right| \geq M_{0}$. We consider a closed path $p_{1} q_{1} p_{2} q_{2}$ in $\operatorname{Cay}(G)$ such that $\operatorname{lab}\left(p_{1}\right)=\operatorname{lab}\left(p_{2}\right)=z, \operatorname{lab}\left(q_{1}\right)=\left(y^{k} x_{2}^{k}\right)^{s}$, and $\operatorname{lab}\left(q_{2}^{-1}\right)=\left(y^{k} x_{2}^{k}\right)^{\prime}$, where $s^{\prime}= \pm s$. For convenience we denote the initial vertices of $p_{1}, q_{1}, p_{2}, q_{2}$ by $a, b, c, d$ respectively. We choose a vertex $\bar{u}$ on $[b, c]$ at distance $|z|+5 \delta$ in $\operatorname{Cay}(G)$ from the vertex $b$. Then, using (H2), $\bar{u}$ is in $4 \delta$-neighborhood of some $u_{1}$ on $[a, c] \cup[a, b]$ and, by the choice of $\bar{u}$, is actually on $[a, c]$. Using (H2) again, and taking into account that

$$
\left|\overline{u_{1}}-c\right| \geq|b-c|-|z|-5 \delta-4 \delta \geq M_{0}-|z|-9 \delta>|z|+5 \delta
$$

we obtain that there exists $\bar{u}^{\prime}$ on $[a, d]$ satisfying $\left|\bar{u}^{\prime}-u_{1}\right| \leq 4 \delta$. Hence

$$
\begin{equation*}
\left|\bar{u}^{\prime}-\bar{u}\right| \leq 8 \delta . \tag{IV.33}
\end{equation*}
$$

Similarly we can choose $\bar{v}$ on $[b, c]$ at distance $|z|+5 \delta$ from the vertex $c$ and a vertex $\bar{v}^{\prime}$ on $[a, d]$ such that

$$
\begin{equation*}
\left|\bar{v}^{\prime}-\bar{v}\right| \leq 8 \delta . \tag{IV.34}
\end{equation*}
$$

Since $q_{1}$ and $[b, c]$ are within $4 r_{0}$-neighborhood of each other, we find phase vertices $u, v$ on $q_{1}$ relative to
the factorization $y^{k} x_{2}^{k} \ldots y^{k} x_{2}^{k}$ of $\operatorname{lab}\left(q_{1}\right)$ such that

$$
\begin{equation*}
|u-\bar{u}|,|v-\bar{v}| \leq 4 r_{0}+\frac{1}{2} \max \left\{|y|,\left|x_{2}\right|\right\} \tag{IV.35}
\end{equation*}
$$

Similarly we find phase vertices $u^{\prime}, v^{\prime}$ on $q_{2}$ such that

$$
\begin{equation*}
\left|u^{\prime}-\bar{u}^{\prime}\right|,\left|v^{\prime}-\bar{v}^{\prime}\right| \leq 4 r_{0}+\frac{1}{2} \max \left\{|y|,\left|x_{2}\right|\right\} \tag{IV.36}
\end{equation*}
$$

Now we consider a closed path $p_{1}^{\prime} q_{1}^{\prime} p_{2}^{\prime} q_{2}^{\prime}$, where $q_{1}^{\prime}, q_{2}^{\prime}$ are subpaths of $q_{1}$ and $q_{2}$ respectively and $p_{1}^{\prime}=\left[u^{\prime}, u\right], p_{2}^{\prime}=\left[v^{\prime}, v\right]$. According to inequalities (IV.33)-(IV.36) above:

$$
\begin{equation*}
\left|p_{i}\right| \leq 8 r_{0}+\max \left\{|y|,\left|x_{2}\right|\right\}+8 \delta, \text { where } i=1,2 \tag{IV.37}
\end{equation*}
$$

Note that

$$
\left|q_{1}^{\prime}\right|=|u-v| \geq|\bar{u}-\bar{v}|-|u-\bar{u}|-|v-\bar{v}| \geq\left|q_{1}\right|-|\bar{u}-c|-|\bar{v}-c|-|u-\bar{u}|-|v-\bar{v}|
$$

and using the definitions of $\bar{u}, \bar{v}$ and (IV.35) we get:

$$
\begin{equation*}
\left|q_{1}^{\prime}\right| \geq M_{0}-2|z|-10 \delta-8 r_{0}-\max \left\{|y|,\left|x_{2}\right|\right\}>3 k \max \left\{|y|,\left|x_{2}\right|\right\} \tag{IV.38}
\end{equation*}
$$

We consider $q_{1}^{\prime}=t_{1} \ldots t_{n}$, where either $\operatorname{lab}\left(t_{2 i-1}\right)=y^{k}, \operatorname{lab}\left(t_{2 i}\right)=x_{2}^{k}$ for every $1<2 i \leq n-1$ or $l a b\left(t_{2 i-1}\right)=$ $x_{2}^{k}, \operatorname{lab}\left(t_{2 i}\right)=y^{k}$ for every $1<2 i \leq n-1$. By the estimate on $q_{1}^{\prime}$ above, we have that $n \geq 4$.

Now we use (IV.33), (IV.34) and (IV.38) to obtain:

$$
\begin{gathered}
\left|q_{2}^{\prime}\right|=\left|u^{\prime}-v^{\prime}\right| \geq\left|\bar{u}^{\prime}-\bar{v}^{\prime}\right|-\left|u^{\prime}-\bar{u}\right|-\left|v^{\prime}-\bar{v}\right| \geq|\bar{u}-\bar{v}|-\left|\bar{u}^{\prime}-\bar{u}\right|-\left|\bar{v}^{\prime}-\bar{v}\right|-\left|u^{\prime}-\bar{u}\right|-\left|v^{\prime}-\bar{v}\right| \\
\geq M_{0}-16 \delta-2|z|-10 \delta-8 r_{0}-\max \left\{|y|,\left|x_{2}\right|\right\}>3 k \max \left\{|y|,\left|x_{2}\right|\right\} .
\end{gathered}
$$

We consider $\left(q_{2}^{\prime}\right)^{-1}=t_{1}^{\prime} \ldots t_{n^{\prime}}^{\prime}$, where $\operatorname{lab}\left(t_{2 i}\right)=y^{k^{\prime}}, l a b\left(t_{2 i+1}\right)=x_{2}^{k^{\prime}}$ for every $1<2 i<n^{\prime}-1$ or $l a b\left(t_{2 i}\right)=$ $x_{2}^{k^{\prime}}, \operatorname{lab}\left(t_{2 i+1}\right)=y^{k^{\prime}}$ for every $1<2 i<\left|n^{\prime}\right|-1$ where $k= \pm k^{\prime}$. By the estimate on $q_{1}^{\prime}$ above, $n^{\prime} \geq 4$.

We can now apply Lemma II. 2.10 to the closed path $p_{1}^{\prime} q_{1}^{\prime} p_{2}^{\prime} q_{2}^{\prime}$ with upper bound on $\left|p_{i}^{\prime}\right|$ provided by (IV.37) and obtain a constant $m_{0}$ such that for every $k \geq m_{0}$ the paths $t_{2}$ and $t_{3}$ are compatible with $t_{i}^{\prime}$ and $t_{i+1}^{\prime}$ respectively (for some unique $i$ ). Let us denote for convenience $l a b\left(t_{2}\right)=W_{2}^{k}, l a b\left(t_{3}\right)=W_{3}^{k}, l a b\left(t_{i}^{\prime}\right)=\overline{W_{i}^{\prime}}$, $\operatorname{lab}\left(t_{3}\right)=\bar{W}_{i+1}^{k^{\prime}}$, where the sets $\left\{W_{2}, W_{3}\right\},\left\{\bar{W}_{i}, \bar{W}_{i+1}\right\}$ and $\{x, y\}$ are all equal. Lemma II.2.10 also provides that there exist compatibility paths $v_{2}$ and $v_{3}$ with labels $V_{2}, V_{3}$ such that:

$$
\begin{equation*}
V_{2}^{-1} W_{2}^{r} V_{2}=\bar{W}_{i}^{s}, V_{3}^{-1} W_{3}^{r^{\prime}} V_{3}=\bar{W}_{i+1}^{s^{\prime}} \tag{IV.39}
\end{equation*}
$$

for some $r, s, r^{\prime}, s^{\prime}>0$. Because $x_{2}$ and $y$ are non-commensurable, the equalities (IV.39) are only possible if $W_{2} \equiv \bar{W}_{i}^{ \pm 1}$ and $W_{3} \equiv \bar{W}_{i+1}^{ \pm 1}$. Moreover, one of the exponents is positive because $y$ is not conjugate with $y^{-1}$ and thus $\operatorname{lab}\left(q_{2}\right)^{-1}=\left(y^{k} x_{2}^{k}\right)^{m}$ and $W_{2} \equiv \bar{W}_{i}$ and $W_{3} \equiv \bar{W}_{i+1}$. Now by definition of compatible paths,
we have that $V_{2} \in E\left(W_{2}\right)$ and $V_{3} \in E\left(W_{3}\right)$. Consider a path $v$ connecting the terminal vertex of $t_{2}$ with the terminal vertex of $t_{i}^{\prime}$. We also consider a pair of paths $\overline{q_{1}} v_{2} \overline{q_{2}}$ and $\overline{q_{3}} v_{3} \overline{q_{4}}$ each of which has the same initial and terminal vertices as the path $v$. Reading off their labels provides the following inequalities in $G$ :

$$
\operatorname{lab}(v)=W_{2}^{s_{1}} V_{2} W_{2}^{s_{2}}=W_{3}^{s_{3}} V_{3} W_{3}^{s_{4}}
$$

for some exponents $s_{i} \in \mathbb{Z}$. Hence $\operatorname{lab}(v) \in E\left(W_{2}\right) \cap E\left(W_{3}\right)=E\left(x_{2}\right) \cap E(y)=E(G)$. We obtained that $z=$ $\operatorname{lab}\left(p_{1}\right)$ is equal to either $\left(y^{k} x_{2}^{k}\right)^{s^{\prime}} l a b(v)^{-1}\left(y^{k} x_{2}^{k}\right)^{-s^{\prime \prime}}$ or $\left(y^{k} x_{2}^{k}\right)^{s^{\prime}} y^{k} l a b(v)^{-1}\left(\left(y^{k} x_{2}^{k}\right)^{s^{\prime \prime}} y^{k}\right)^{-1}=\left(y^{k} x_{2}^{k}\right)^{s^{\prime}} l a b(v)^{-1}\left(y^{k} x_{2}^{k}\right)^{-s^{\prime \prime}}$ for some non-negative numbers $s^{\prime}, s^{\prime \prime}$. In both cases $z \in E(G) \times\left\langle\left(y^{k} x_{2}^{k}\right)\right\rangle$. We computed the maximal elementary subgroup $E\left(y^{k} x_{2}^{k}\right)$ for all sufficiently large $k$ : $E\left(y^{k} x_{2}^{k}\right)=E(G) \times\left\langle\left(y^{k} x_{2}^{k}\right)\right\rangle$. Since $x_{2}$ is a power of $x$ we conclude that there are $k_{1}=k$ and $k_{2}>0$ and divisible by $k$ such that for every $s \neq 0$ we have $E\left(y^{k_{1} s} x_{2}^{k_{2} s}\right)=E(G) \times\left\langle\left(y^{k_{1} s} x_{2}^{k_{2} s}\right)\right\rangle$. We have shown the second part of (i).
(ii) By the way of contradiction we assume that the inclusions $a_{i}\left(y^{k_{1} s_{i}} x^{k_{2} s_{i}}\right)^{t_{i}} b_{i}=h_{i} \in \mathscr{H}$ hold for infinitely many distinct numbers $s_{i} \in \mathbb{N}$, some $t_{i}>0$ and $a_{i}, b_{i} \in B_{C_{0}}$. Because $B_{C_{0}}$ is finite there are $a, b \in B_{C_{0}}$ such that the equality $a\left(y^{k_{1} s_{i}} x^{k_{2} s_{i}}\right)^{t_{i}} b=h_{i}$ holds for infinitely many natural numbers $s_{i}$ and $t_{i} \neq 0$.

By the choice of $x_{1}$ in part (i) of the Lemma, the path $q_{i}$ with label $\left(y^{k_{1} s_{i}} x^{k_{2} s_{i}}\right)^{t_{i}}$ starting at $a$ is within $4 r_{0}-$ neighborhood of the geodesic $\left[a, a\left(y^{k_{1} s_{i}} x^{k_{2} s_{i}}\right)^{t_{i}}\right]$ which in turn is in the $C_{0}+8 \delta$-neighborhood of the geodesic $q_{i}^{\prime}=\left[e, a\left(y^{k_{1} s_{i}} x^{k_{2} s_{i}}\right)^{t_{i}} b\right]$. Hence vertices $a y^{k_{1} s_{i}}$ and $a y^{k_{1} s_{i}} x^{k_{2} s_{i}}$ are within $4 r_{0}+C_{0}+8 \delta$-neighborhood of $q_{i}^{\prime}$. Because $\mathscr{H}$ is $K$-quasiconvex and $\operatorname{lab}\left(q_{i}^{\prime}\right)=h_{i} \in \mathscr{H}$ we have

$$
d\left(a y^{k_{1} s_{i}}, \mathscr{H}\right), d\left(a y^{k_{1} s_{i}} x^{k_{2} s_{i}}, \mathscr{H}\right) \leq 4 r_{0}+C_{0}+8 \delta+K
$$

hence a subpath $\bar{q}_{i}$ of $q_{i}$ with label $x^{k_{2} s_{i}}$ is within $C_{1}=4 r_{0}+C_{0}+8 \delta+K$-neighborhood of $\mathscr{H}$ in $C a y(G)$. Thus there exist elements $z_{1 i}, z_{2 i} \in B_{C_{1}}$ such that $z_{1 i} x^{k_{2} s_{i}} z_{2 i} \in \mathscr{H}$ for infinitely many distinct natural numbers $s_{i}$. Because the balls in $\operatorname{Cay}(G)$ are finite, there are $z_{1}, z_{2} \in B_{C_{1}}$ such that $z_{1} x^{k_{2} s_{i}} z_{2} \in \mathscr{H}$ hold for infinitely many $s_{i}$.

It follows from remark IV.2.3 that $z_{1} x^{n} z_{1}^{-1} \in \mathscr{H}$ for some $n \neq 0$. Contradiction with the choice of $x$ in (i). $\square$

Lemma IV.3.2. Let $G$ be a non-elementary hyperbolic group and $\mathscr{H}$ be a quasiconvex subgroup of infinite index in $G$ such that $E(G) \cap \mathscr{H}=\{e\}$, then there exist a $G$-suitable element $g \in G$ and a number $t_{0}>0$ such that for every $t \geq t_{0}$ the group $\left\langle\mathscr{H}, g^{t}\right\rangle$ is quasiconvex of infinite index and is canonically isomorphic to $\mathscr{H} *\left\langle g^{t}\right\rangle$.

Proof By Lemma II.2.7, there exists a $G$-suitable element $y \in G$. We have either
(I) $\#\{E(y) \cap \mathscr{H}\}<\infty$,
or (II) $\#\{E(y) \cap \mathscr{H}\}$ is infinite.
Take an element $y^{k} a \in E(g)$ and assume $y^{k} a \in \mathscr{H}$ for some $k \in \mathbb{Z}$ and $a \in E(G)$, then we have $\left(y^{k} a\right)^{n}=$ $y^{k n} a^{n}$ for every $n$ (because $a$ commutes with $y$ ). Note that for a non-zero $k$ the equality $y^{k n_{1}} a^{n_{1}}=y^{k n_{2}} a^{n_{2}}$ holds in $G$ if and only if $n_{1}=n_{2}$.

Hence in case (I) we have that $k=0$ and thus $E(y) \cap \mathscr{H} \subset E(G) \cap \mathscr{H}=\{e\}$ and we may apply Theorem IV.2.8 to find $t>0$ and obtain the canonical isomorphism $\left\langle\mathscr{H}, y^{t}\right\rangle \cong \mathscr{H} *\left\langle y^{t}\right\rangle$.

Thus we only need to consider case (II) when $y^{k} a \in \mathscr{H}$ for some non-zero $k$. Replacing $y$ with $y^{k} a$ we may assume that $y$ is in $\mathscr{H}$. By remark IV.2.15, there exists an element $x$ of infinite order such that $x$ is non-commensurable with any element of $\mathscr{H}$. Replacing $x$ with its non-zero power if necessary, we may assume that $x$ commutes with $E(G)$.

We can choose a (sufficiently large) $k$ so that the conclusion of the Lemma IV.3.1 holds for $\mathscr{H}$ and $g=y^{k} x_{2}^{k}$. We have that $E(g) \cap \mathscr{H}=\{e\}$ for $g=y^{k} x_{2}^{k}$, and now the result follows from Theorem IV.2.8.

Proof of Theorem I.1.8 (i) The sufficiency is provided by Theorem IV.2.8. Assume that there exists an element $x$ of infinite order and $t \neq 0$ such that $\left\langle\mathscr{H}, x^{t}\right\rangle \cong \mathscr{H} *\left\langle x^{t}\right\rangle$. Take $h \in E(x) \cap \mathscr{H}$, then there exist $n \neq 0$ and $n^{\prime}= \pm n$ such that $h^{-1} x^{n} h x^{n^{\prime}}=e$ in $G$. Thus $h^{-1} x^{t n} h x^{t n^{\prime}}=e$ in $G$ which imlpies $h=e$.
(ii) The sufficiency follows from Lemma IV.3.2. To show the necessity it is enough to notice that if the element $x$ satisfying part (i) exists then $E(G) \cap \mathscr{H} \leq E(x) \cap \mathscr{H}=\{e\}$.
(iii) Denote the subgroup $E(G) \cap\left(\mathscr{H} *\left\langle x^{t}\right\rangle\right)$ by $K$, it is a finite subgroup in $\mathscr{H} *\left\langle x^{t}\right\rangle$. By Kurosh subgroup Theorem, $K$ is conjugate to a subgroup in $\mathscr{H}$. On the other hand $K$ is normal in $\mathscr{H} *\left\langle x^{t}\right\rangle$ and thus $K<\mathscr{H}$, i.e. $E(G) \cap \mathscr{H} *\left\langle x^{t}\right\rangle \leq E(G) \cap \mathscr{H}=\{e\} \square$.

## Proof of corollary I.1.9

Consider a canonical homomorphism $\phi: G \rightarrow \bar{G}=G / E(G)$. It is clear that $E(\bar{G})=\{e\}$ : the subgroup $E(\bar{G})$ is finite normal, hence the subgroup $\phi^{-1}(E(\bar{G}))$ is finite normal and thus $\phi^{-1}(E(\bar{G})) \leq E(G)$. Homomorphism $\phi$ is a quasi-isometry because $E(G)$ is finite. Thus $\overline{\mathscr{H}}=\phi(\mathscr{H})$ is quasiconvex of infinite index in $\bar{G}$. We can apply Lemma IV.3.2 to $\overline{\mathscr{H}}, \bar{G}$ and find some $\bar{y}$ such that $E(\bar{y})$ is infinite cyclic and obtain the isomorphism $\langle\mathscr{H}, y\rangle \cong \overline{\mathscr{H}} *\langle\bar{y}\rangle$. Consider some preimage $y$ of $\bar{y}$. Clearly,

$$
\phi^{-1}(\langle\overline{\mathscr{H}}, \bar{y}\rangle)=\langle\mathscr{H} \cdot E(G), y\rangle \cong \mathscr{H} \cdot E(G) *_{E(G)}\langle y, E(G)\rangle . \square
$$

## IV. 4 Maximal growth highly transitive actions of hyperbolic groups

Consider a pair of ordered sets $\mathscr{U}=\left\{u_{1}, \ldots, u_{k}\right\}$ and $\mathscr{V}=\left\{v_{1}, \ldots, v_{k}\right\}$ such that $u_{i} \mathscr{H}=u_{j} \mathscr{H}$ if and only if $i=j$ and $v_{i} \mathscr{H}=v_{j} \mathscr{H}$ if and only if $i=j$. We take a constant $C_{0}$ such that $\mathscr{U}, \mathscr{V} \subset B_{C_{0}}$. Having fixed $\mathscr{U}, \mathscr{V}$, some auxiliary element $g \in G$ and a natural number $s_{0}$, we fix some $t \neq 0$ and denote $f_{i}=v_{i}^{-1} g^{s_{0} t} u_{i}$ for $i=1, \ldots, k, u_{i} \in \mathscr{U}, v_{i} \in \mathscr{V}$.

Lemma IV.4.1. Let $\mathscr{H}$ be a $K$-quasiconvex subgroup of infinite index in a hyperbolic group $G$ with the trivial finite radical $E(G)=\{e\}$. For any $k>0$ and any pair of ordered sets $\mathscr{U}, \mathscr{V}$ there exist an element $g \in G, a$ number $r_{0} \geq 0$, a natural number $s_{0}$ such that for any $r \geq r_{0}$ there exist a natural number $t$ and the set $\mathscr{F}(r)=\left\{f_{1}, \ldots, f_{k}\right\}$ satisfying the conditions $(A 0)-(A 3)$ and hence corollary IV.2.7.

Proof We apply Lemma IV.3.2 to $\mathscr{H}$ : there exists an element $y$ such that $E(y)$ is infinite cyclic and the group $\mathscr{H}_{1}=\langle\mathscr{H}, y\rangle$ is quasiconvex of infinite index and is isomorphic to $\mathscr{H} *\langle y\rangle$ in $G$. Then we take an element $x$ in $G$ which is non-commensurable with any element of $\mathscr{H}_{1}$ (see remark IV.2.15). By Lemma IV.3.1, for sufficiently large $s$ there exists an element $g=y^{k_{1} s} x^{k_{2} s}$ which is non-commensurable with elements of $\mathscr{H}, E(g)=\langle g\rangle$ and such that

$$
\begin{equation*}
\text { for every } t_{1} \neq 0 \text { and all } a, b \in B_{C_{0}} \text { we have } a^{t_{1}} b \notin \mathscr{H} . \tag{IV.40}
\end{equation*}
$$

We will define $r_{0}, s_{0}$ and $t$ so that the system $\mathscr{F}(r)$ satisfies the conditions $(A 0)-(A 3)$.
Take an element $a \in B_{C_{0}}$. Element $g$ is non-commensurable with any element of $\mathscr{H}$ and hence $a g^{m} a^{-1} \notin$ $\mathscr{H}$ for any $m \neq 0$. We obtained that $\mathscr{H} \cap E\left(a g a^{-1}\right)=\mathscr{H} \cap\left\langle a g a^{-1}\right\rangle=\{e\}$ and thus we may apply Theorem IV.2.8 and get $r_{0}(a) \geq 0$ and $s_{0}(a)>0$ such that there exist numbers $r_{0}(a) \geq 0$ and $s_{0}(a) \geq 0$ :

$$
\begin{equation*}
\left|h\left(a g a^{-1}\right)^{s_{0}(a) \cdot t}\right| \geq|h|+\left|\left(a g a^{-1}\right)^{s_{0}(a) \cdot t}\right|-r_{0}(a) \text { for any } t \in \mathbb{Z} . \tag{IV.41}
\end{equation*}
$$

We now fix constants $r_{1} \geq r_{0}(a)$ for every $a \in B_{C_{0}}$ and $s_{1}=\prod_{a \in B_{C_{0}}} s_{0}(a)$. Hence, for every $b \in B_{C_{0}}$ and every $t \in \mathbb{Z}$ we have:

$$
\left|h a g^{s_{1} t} b\right| \geq\left|h a g^{s_{1} t} a^{-1}\right|-2 C_{0} \geq|h|+\left|a g^{s_{1} t} a^{-1}\right|-2 C_{0}-r_{1} \geq|h|+\left|a g^{s_{1} t} b\right|-4 C_{0}-r_{1} .
$$

One obtains that the following inequality holds:

$$
\begin{equation*}
\left|h a g^{s_{1} t} b\right| \geq|h|+\left|a g^{s_{1} t} b\right|-4 C_{0}-r_{1} . \tag{IV.42}
\end{equation*}
$$

Now notice that if $s_{1}$ divides $s_{0}$ and $f_{i}=v_{i}^{-1} g^{s_{0} t} u_{i}$ then for $\varepsilon \in\{ \pm 1\}, h \in \mathscr{H}$ and arbitrary $t \neq 0$ we have that

$$
\begin{equation*}
\left(f_{i}^{\varepsilon}, h\right) \leq r_{1} / 2+2 C_{0} . \tag{IV.43}
\end{equation*}
$$

We consider the expression $f_{i}^{\varepsilon_{1}} h f_{j}^{\varepsilon_{2}}$, where $\varepsilon_{1}, \varepsilon_{2} \in\{ \pm 1\}$.
Case I. Assume that $|h| \geq 2 r_{1}+4 C_{0}+\delta$. Then we have, by Lemma IV.2.1(i):

$$
\begin{equation*}
\left|f_{i}^{\varepsilon_{1}} h f_{j}^{\varepsilon_{2}}\right| \geq\left|f_{i}^{\varepsilon_{1}}\right|+|h|+\left|f_{j}^{\varepsilon_{2}}\right|-2\left(r_{1} / 2+2 C_{0}\right)-2\left(r_{1} / 2+2 C_{0}+\delta\right) . \tag{IV.44}
\end{equation*}
$$

Case II. Now let $|h|<r_{1}+4 C_{0}+\delta$. By definition of elements $f_{i}, f_{j}$, we can rewrite $f_{i}^{\varepsilon_{1}} h f_{j}^{\varepsilon_{2}}$ as $\beta_{1} g^{s_{0} t \varepsilon_{1}} \alpha_{1} h \alpha_{2} g^{s_{0} t \varepsilon_{2}} \beta_{2}$ for some $\alpha_{1}, \beta_{1} \in\left\{u_{i}^{ \pm 1}, v_{i}^{ \pm 1}\right\}$ and $\alpha_{2}, \beta_{2} \in\left\{u_{j}^{ \pm 1}, v_{j}^{ \pm 1}\right\}$. Using our assumption on $h$ we get that $\left|\alpha_{1} h \alpha_{2}\right| \leq r_{1}+6 C_{0}+\delta$.

Assume that $\alpha_{1} h \alpha_{2} \notin E(g)$. Then by Lemma IV.2.5, there exist $M_{1}$ and a natural number $m_{0}$ (both depending on $r_{1}+6 C_{0}+\delta, \mathscr{H}$ and $g$ only) such that if $s_{0} \geq m_{0}$ then for all $t \in \mathbb{Z}$ :

$$
\begin{equation*}
\left|g^{s_{0} t \varepsilon_{1}} \alpha_{1} h \alpha_{2} g^{s_{0} t \varepsilon_{2}}\right| \geq\left|g^{s_{0} t \varepsilon_{1}}\right|+\left|\alpha_{1} h \alpha_{2}\right|+\left|g^{s_{0} t \varepsilon_{2}}\right|-M_{1} . \tag{IV.45}
\end{equation*}
$$

Thus

$$
\begin{gathered}
\left|f_{i}^{\varepsilon_{1}} h f_{j}^{\varepsilon_{2}}\right| \geq\left|g^{s_{0} t \varepsilon_{1}} \alpha_{1} h \alpha_{2} g^{s_{0} t \varepsilon_{2}}\right|-2 C_{0} \geq\left|g^{s_{0} t \varepsilon_{1}}\right|+\left|\alpha_{1} h \alpha_{2}\right|+\left|g^{s_{0} t \varepsilon_{2}}\right|-M_{1}-2 C_{0} \geq \\
\geq\left|f_{i}^{\varepsilon_{1}}\right|+|h|+\left|f_{j}^{\varepsilon_{2}}\right|-8 C_{0}-M_{1} ;
\end{gathered}
$$

and we get the estimate:

$$
\begin{equation*}
\left|f_{i}^{\varepsilon_{1}} h f_{j}^{\varepsilon_{2}}\right| \geq\left|f_{i}^{\varepsilon_{1}}\right|+|h|+\left|f_{j}^{\varepsilon_{2}}\right|-8 C_{0}-M_{1} . \tag{IV.46}
\end{equation*}
$$

It remains to consider the subcase when $\alpha_{1} h \alpha_{2} \in E(g)=\langle g\rangle$. By the choice of element $g$, the equality
$\alpha_{1}^{-1} g^{t_{0}} \alpha_{2}^{-1}=h \in \mathscr{H}$ may hold if and only if $t_{0}=0$ and thus

$$
\begin{equation*}
\alpha_{1} h \alpha_{2}=e \text { in } G . \tag{IV.47}
\end{equation*}
$$

If $\varepsilon_{1} \varepsilon_{2}=1$ we choose a constant $M(g)$ according to Lemma II.2.6(iv) and obtain that

$$
\left|f_{i}^{\varepsilon_{1}} h f_{j}^{\varepsilon_{2}}\right|=\left|\beta_{1} g^{2 s_{0} t} \beta_{2}\right| \geq\left|g^{2 s_{0} t}\right|-2 C_{0} \geq\left|g^{s_{0} t}\right|+\left|g^{s_{0} t}\right|-M(g)-2 C_{0}
$$

hence:

$$
\begin{equation*}
\left|f_{i}^{\varepsilon_{1}} h f_{j}^{\varepsilon_{2}}\right| \geq\left|f_{i}^{\varepsilon_{1}}\right|+|h|+\left|f_{j}^{\varepsilon_{2}}\right|-8 C_{0}-M_{1} . \tag{IV.48}
\end{equation*}
$$

If $\varepsilon_{1} \varepsilon_{2}=-1$, then the expression $f_{i}^{\varepsilon_{1}} h f_{j}^{\varepsilon_{2}}$ is either $v_{i}^{-1} g^{s_{1} t} u_{i} h u_{j}^{-1} g^{-s_{1} t} v_{j}$ or $u_{i}^{-1} g^{-s_{1} t} v_{i} h v_{j}^{-1} g^{s_{1} t} u_{j}$ and thus $\alpha_{1}=u_{i}$ and $\alpha_{2}=u_{j}^{-1}$ or $\alpha_{1}=v_{i}$ and $\alpha_{2}=v_{j}^{-1}$. From equality (IV.47) we get that $u_{i} h=u_{j}$ or, respectively, $v_{i} h=v_{j}$. Hence $i=j$ and thus $f_{i}=f_{j}, h=e$ and the expression $f_{i}^{\varepsilon_{1}} h f_{j}^{\varepsilon_{2}}$ is trivial.

We can now choose the constant $r_{0}=\max \left\{r_{1}+\delta, \frac{M_{1}}{2}, \frac{M(g)}{2}\right\}+4 C_{0}$. Then choose a natural number $s_{0}$ so that it is divisible by $s_{1}$ and satisfy $s_{0} \geq m_{0}$.

Finally, we choose the number $t$ so that the condition (A1) is satisfied for $\mathscr{F}(r)$.
The condition (A0) holds because if $f_{i}=f_{j}^{-1}$ then $g^{s_{0} t} u_{j} v_{i}^{-1} g^{s_{0} t}=v_{j} u_{i}^{-1}$. It is a contradiction with the length estimate of the left-hand side of the last equality by means of (IV.45):

$$
\left|g^{s_{0} t} u_{j} v_{i}^{-1} g^{s_{0} t}\right| \geq\left|g^{s_{0} t}\right|+\left|u_{j} v_{i}^{-1}\right|+\left|g^{s_{0} t}\right|-M_{1} \geq 30 r_{0}+2 C_{0}-M_{1}>2 C_{0}
$$

The condition (A2) holds because the formula (IV.42) holds for all $a, b \in B_{C_{0}}$. The condition (A3) holds by formula (IV.44) if $|h| \geq 2 r_{1}+4 C_{0}+\delta$, and by (IV.46) and (IV.48) otherwise.

Theorem IV.4.2. Let $G$ be a non-elementary hyperbolic group with trivial finite radical $E(G)=\{e\}$ and let $\mathscr{H}$ be a quasiconvex subgroup $\mathscr{H}$ of infinite index in $G$. If $\left\{u_{1} \mathscr{H}, \ldots, u_{k} \mathscr{H}\right\}$ and $\left\{v_{1} \mathscr{H}, \ldots, v_{k} \mathscr{H}\right\}$ is a pair of ordered $k$-tuples of pairwise distinct cosets, then for every $l \in \mathbb{N}$ there exists a quasiconvex subgroup of infinite index $\mathscr{H}_{1}$ such that:
(i) $\mathscr{H}_{1} \geq \mathscr{H}$ and $\mathscr{H}_{1}$ is of infinite index in $G$;
(ii) there exists an element $g_{1}$ such that $g_{1} u_{i} \mathscr{H}_{1}=v_{i} \mathscr{H}_{1}$ for every $i=1, \ldots, k$;
(iii) $\frac{\#\left\{Q_{R}\right\}}{\#\left\{B_{R}\right\}} \leq \frac{1}{2^{2}}$ for any $R>0$, where $Q_{R}=\left\{a \mathscr{H} \mid \exists b \in B_{R}\right.$ such that $\left.a \mathscr{H} \neq b \mathscr{H} \& a \mathscr{H}_{1}=b \mathscr{H}_{1}\right\}$.

Proof Because the index of $\mathscr{H}$ is infinite in $G$ we can choose some auxiliary elements $u_{0}, v_{0}$ such that $u_{0} \mathscr{H} \neq u_{i} \mathscr{H}, v_{0} \mathscr{H} \neq v_{i} \mathscr{H}$ for every $i=1, \ldots, k$. We apply Lemma IV.4.1 to $\mathscr{U}=\left\{u_{0}, \ldots, u_{k}\right\}, \mathscr{V}=$ $\left\{v_{0}, \ldots, v_{k}\right\}$. There exist an element $g \in G$, number $r_{0} \geq 0$, number $s_{0}$ such that for any $r \geq r_{0}$ there exist $t=t(r)$ and the set $\mathscr{F}_{0}(r)=\left\{v_{0}^{-1} g^{s_{0} t} u_{0}, \ldots, v_{k}^{-1} g^{s_{0} t} u_{k}\right\}$ and hence (by corollary IV.2.7) the group $\mathscr{H}_{0}$ is quasiconvex and the following isomorphism is canonical:

$$
\begin{equation*}
\mathscr{H}_{0} \equiv \mathscr{H} *\left(*_{g \in \mathscr{F}_{0}(r)}<g>\right) . \tag{IV.49}
\end{equation*}
$$

Consider a group $\mathscr{H}_{1} \leq \mathscr{H}_{0}$ defined by $\mathscr{H}_{1}=\langle\mathscr{H}, \mathscr{F}(r)\rangle$, where $\mathscr{F}(r)=\left\{v_{1}^{-1} g^{s_{0} t} u_{1}, \ldots, v_{k}^{-1} g^{s_{0} t} u_{k}\right\}$. Because of canonical isomorphism (IV.49), subgroup $\mathscr{H}_{1}$ is of infinite index in $\mathscr{H}_{0}$ and hence in $G$. Conditions
$(A 0)-(A 3)$ hold for $\mathscr{F}(r)$ because $\mathscr{F}(r) \subset \mathscr{F}_{0}(r)$. Thus, by corollary IV.2.7, $\mathscr{H}_{1}$ is quasiconvex of infinite index and (i) is checked for all sufficiently large $r$.

The following computation shows that the condition (ii) holds for $g_{1}=g^{s_{0} t}$ :

$$
v_{i} \mathscr{H}_{1}=v_{i}\left(v_{i}^{-1} g^{s_{0} t} u_{i} \mathscr{H}_{1}\right)=g^{s_{0} t} u_{i} \mathscr{H}_{1}
$$

To conclude the proof we observe that Lemma IV.2.13 holds for all sufficiently large $r$, showing (iii).
We are ready to generalize the following statements of Bahturin and Ol'shanskii.
Corollary IV.4.3. [BO] Any finitely generated subgroup $H$ of infinite index in the free group $F$ of rank $r>1$, is contained as a free factor in a subgroup $K$ of infinite index in $F$ such that the right action of $F$ on $F / K$ is highly transitive. In particular, $K$ is a maximal subgroup in $F$. One can choose $K$ in such a way that the growth of the action of $F$ on $F / K$ is maximal.

Corollary IV.4.4. [BO] Any finitely generated subgroup $H$ of infinite index in a free group $F$ of rank $r>1$, is a free factor in a Burnside subgroup $K$ of infinite index such that the action of $F$ on $F / K$ is highly transitive. One can choose $K$ so that the growth of the action of $F$ on $F / K$ is maximal.

It is a natural next step to generalize these corollaries to the class of hyperbolic groups. In particular, this question was asked by Z. Sela after the presentation of [BO] by A. Olshanskiy ("Models and Groups", Istambul 2009).

By remark IV.1.7, the growth functions of action of left action of $G$ on $G / H$ is equal to the growth function of right action of $G$ on $H \backslash G$. By Proposition IV.1.8, for every quasiconvex subgroup $\mathscr{H}$ of infinite index there exists $c_{1}>0$ such that

$$
\#\left\{M_{R}^{0}\right\} \geq c_{1} \#\left\{B_{R}\right\}, \text { for all } R \geq 0
$$

where $M_{R}^{0}=\left\{a \mathscr{H} \mid a \mathscr{H} \cap B_{R} \neq \emptyset\right\}$.
Proposition IV.4.5. Let $G$ be a non-elementary $\delta$-hyperbolic group with trivial finite radical $E(G)=\{e\}$ and let $\mathscr{H}$ be a quasiconvex subgroup $\mathscr{H}$ of infinite index in $G$. Pick a number $0<q<1$. There exists a subgroup $H \geq \mathscr{H}$ such that the natural left action of $G$ on $G / H$ is faithful, highly transitive and
$\frac{\#\left\{a H \mid a H \cap B_{R} \neq \emptyset\right\}}{\#\left\{B_{R}\right\}} \geq c_{1} q$.
The proof is analogous to that in IV.2.16.
Proof We choose a sequence $\left\{l_{i}\right\}_{i \in \mathbb{N}}$ such that

$$
\begin{equation*}
\Sigma_{i=1}^{\infty} \frac{1}{2^{l_{i}}}<c_{1}(1-q) . \tag{IV.50}
\end{equation*}
$$

We will define an increasing sequence of quasiconvex subgroups $\mathscr{H}_{0}=\mathscr{H} \leq \mathscr{H}_{1} \leq \ldots$ and set $H=$ $\cup_{i=1}^{\infty} \mathscr{H}_{i}$.

As in Theorem IV.2.16, we denote $M_{R}^{i}=\left\{a \mathscr{H}_{i} \mid a \mathscr{H}_{i} \cap B_{R} \neq \emptyset\right\}$ and $Q_{R}^{i}=\left\{a \mathscr{H}_{i} \mid \exists b \in B_{R}\right.$ such that $a \mathscr{H}_{i} \neq$ $\left.b \mathscr{H}_{i} \& a \mathscr{H}_{i+1}=b \mathscr{H}_{i+1}\right\}$. Hence we have:

$$
\#\left\{M_{R}^{i+1}\right\} \geq \#\left\{M_{R}^{i}\right\}-\#\left\{Q_{R}^{i}\right\} .
$$

Assume that $\mathscr{H}_{i}$ has been defined and

$$
\begin{equation*}
\#\left\{M_{R}^{i}\right\} \geq\left(c_{1}-\frac{1}{2^{l_{1}}}-\frac{1}{2^{l_{2}}}-\ldots-\frac{1}{2^{l_{i}}}\right) \#\left\{B_{R}\right\} . \tag{IV.51}
\end{equation*}
$$

Note that the inequality above holds trivially for $i=0$. If $u_{m} \mathscr{H}_{i}=u_{n} \mathscr{H}_{i}$ (or $v_{m} \mathscr{H}_{i}=v_{n} \mathscr{H}_{i}$ ) for $1 \leq m<n \leq k$, then we set $\mathscr{H}_{i}=\mathscr{H}_{i+1}$ and the equation IV. 52 holds trivially. If $u_{m} \mathscr{H}_{i} \neq u_{n} \mathscr{H}_{i}$ and $v_{m} \mathscr{H}_{i} \neq v_{n} \mathscr{H}_{i}$ for every $m, n$ such that $1 \leq m<n \leq k$, then, by Theorem IV.4.2, there exist a quasiconvex subgroup $\mathscr{H}_{i+1}$ of infinite index and an element $g_{i}$ such that $\mathscr{H}_{i+1} \geq \mathscr{H}_{i}$, for every $m=1, \ldots, k$ the equality $g_{i} u_{m} \mathscr{H}_{i+1}=v_{m} \mathscr{H}_{i+1}$ holds and $\frac{\#\left\{Q_{R}^{i}\right\}}{\#\left\{B_{R}\right\}} \leq \frac{1}{2^{2 i}}$ for any $R>0$. Hence we have:

$$
\begin{equation*}
\#\left\{M_{R}^{i+1}\right\} \geq \#\left\{M_{R}^{i}\right\}-\#\left\{Q_{R}^{i}\right\} \geq\left(c_{1}-\frac{1}{2^{l_{1}}}-\frac{1}{2^{l_{2}}}-\ldots-\frac{1}{2^{l_{i+1}}}\right) \#\left\{B_{R}\right\} \tag{IV.52}
\end{equation*}
$$

and thus

$$
\frac{\#\left\{a H \mid a H \cap B_{R} \neq \emptyset\right\}}{\#\left\{B_{R}\right\}} \geq \lim _{i \rightarrow \infty} \#\left\{M_{R}^{i+1}\right\} \geq\left(c_{1}-\Sigma_{i=1}^{\infty} \frac{1}{2^{l_{i}}}\right) \#\left\{B_{R}\right\}>q c_{1} \#\left\{B_{R}\right\} .
$$

It is clear that the action is highly transitive. Choose a pair of $k$-tuples $\left(u_{1} H, \ldots, u_{k} H\right)$ and $\left(v_{1} H, \ldots, v_{k} H\right)$ such that $u_{m} H \neq u_{n} H, v_{m} H \neq v_{n} H$ for all $1 \leq m<n \leq k$. The $k$-tuples $\left(u_{1}, \ldots, u_{k}\right)$ and $\left(v_{1}, \ldots, v_{k}\right)$ were enumerated by some integer $i$ and, because $\mathscr{H}_{i} \leq H$, we have $u_{m} \mathscr{H}_{i} \neq u_{n} \mathscr{H}_{i}$ and $v_{m} \mathscr{H}_{i} \neq v_{n} \mathscr{H}_{i}$. By the choice of $\mathscr{H}_{i+1}$, there exists $g_{i}$ such that $g_{i} u_{m} \mathscr{H}_{i+1}=v_{m} \mathscr{H}_{i+1}$ holds for every $m \leq k$ and thus $g_{i} u_{m} H=v_{m} H$, as desired.

The following Theorem can now be deduced from Proposition IV.4.5.
Theorem IV.4.6. Let $G$ be a non-elementary $\delta$-hyperbolic group and $\mathscr{H}$ be a quasiconvex subgroup of infinite index in $G$. Then there exists a subgroup $H$ containing $\mathscr{H}$ such that the natural right action of $G$ on $H \backslash G$ is highly transitive and has maximal growth. Moreover, the kernel of any action of maximal growth is equal to the finite radical $E(G)$.

Proof We consider the quotient $\phi: \bar{G} \rightarrow G / E(G)$ and the image $\overline{\mathscr{H}}$ of the subgroup $\mathscr{H}$ under this quotient. The corollary above implies that there exists a subgroup $\bar{H}$ of $\bar{G}$ such that the action of $\bar{G}$ on $\bar{H} \backslash \bar{G}$ is faithful, highly transitive and has maximal growth. One can define the subgroup $H=\phi^{-1}(\bar{H})$ in $G$ and the action of $G$ on $H \backslash G$.

Corollary IV.4.7. Let $G$ be a non-elementary $\delta$-hyperbolic group with trivial finite radical $E(G)=\{e\}$. For any number $q, 0<q<1$ there exists a subgroup $H$ such that:
(i) H satisfies the Burnside condition;
(ii) the natural left action of $G$ on $G / H$ is faithful, highly transitive and for every $R \geq 0$ :
$\frac{\#\left\{a H \mid a H \cap B_{R} \neq \emptyset\right\}}{\#\left\{B_{R}\right\}} \geq q$.
(iii) the subgroup $H$ is a free and maximal subgroup in $G$.

The Theorem I.1.11 follows from the above corollary in the same way as did Theorem IV.4.6 from Proposition IV.4.5.

The Proof of (i)-(ii) is similar to that in IV.2.16 and IV.4.5, we only need to alternate applications of Theorem IV.4.2 and corollary IV.2.14. The action is faithful by remark IV.1.11(ii): it is of maximal growth and $E(G)=\{e\}$.
(iii) Because the stabilizer of any point of a 2-transitive group action is a maximal subgroup in the group $G$ (see [Rot], pp. 256-258), we have that $H$ is maximal. When constructing $H$, we start from a trivial subgroup, hence on every step of the inductive construction we have that the quasiconvex subgroup $\mathscr{H}_{i}$ is free.

The following corollary follows immediately from that above.
Corollary IV.4.8. Let $G$ be a non-elementary $\delta$-hyperbolic group with trivial finite radical $E(G)=\{e\}$. Then $G$ has a free maximal subgroup (of infinite index).

## BIBLIOGRAPHY

[Arzh] G. N. Arzhantseva, On Quasiconvex Subgroups of Word Hyperbolic Groups. Geometriae Dedicata 87: 191-208, 2001.
[AL] G. N. Arzhantseva, I. G. Lysenok Growth tightness for word hyperbolic groups. Math. Z. 241 (2002), no. 3, 597-611.
[BO] Y. Bahturin, A. Olshanskiy Actions of maximal growth. Proc. Lond. Math. Soc. (3) 101 (2010), no. 1, 27-72.
[Cha1] V. Chaynikov, Actions of maximal growth of hyperbolic groups, http://arxiv.org/abs/1201.1349, submitted to Comm. in Alg.
[Cha] V. Chaynikov, On the generators of the kernels of hyperbolic group presentations, Algebra and Discrete Mathematics, Volume 11 (2011). Number 2. pp. 18-50.
[CDP] M. Coornaert, T. Delzant et A. Papadopoulos, Geometrie et Theorie des Groupes, les Groupes Hyperboliques de Gromov, Lecture Notes in Math., n 1441, Springer, 1990.
[DGO] F. Dahmani, V. Guirardel, D. Osin, Hyperbolically embedded subgroups and rotating families in groups acting on hyperbolic spaces, 2011. http://arxiv.org/abs/1111.7048
[Delz] T. Delzant, Sous Groupes Distingues et Quotients des Groupes Hyperboliques. Duke Math. J. 83, No.3, 1996.
[GSS] Yair Glasner, Juan Souto and Peter Storm, Finitely generated subgroups of lattices in $\mathrm{PSL}_{2} \mathbb{C}$. Proc. Amer. Math. Soc. 138 (2010) 2667-2676.
[Ghys] E. Ghys, P. de la Harpe, Sur Les Groupes Huperboliques D’apres Mikhael Gromov. Birkhäuser, 1990.
[GaGl] Shelly Garion, Yair Glasner, Highly Transitive Actions of Out $\left(F_{n}\right), 2008$. http://arxiv.org/abs/1008.0563.
[GMRS] R. Gitik, M. Mitra, E. Rips, M. Sageev, Widths of subgroups. Trans. Amer. Math. Soc. 350 (1998), no. 1, 321-329.
[Gre] F.P. Greenleaf, Invariant Means on Topological Groups and Their Applications, Van Nostrand Reinhold (1969).
[Gro] M. Gromov, Hyperbolic Groups. Essays in group theory, MSRI Publications, Springer, 1987.
[Kit] Daniel Kitroser, Highly Transitive Actions of Surface Groups. http://arxiv.org/abs/0911.2408
[IvOl] S. V. Ivanov, A. Yu. Olshanskiy, Hyperbolic groups and their quotients of bounded exponents. Trans. Amer. Math. Soc. 348 (1996), pp 2091-2138.
[Kour] Edited by V. D. Mazurov and E. I. Khukhro, The Kourovka Notebook. Russian Academy of Sciences Siberian Division, Institute of Mathematics, Novosibirsk, No. 15, 2002.
[Mack] T. P. Mack, Quasiconvex Subgroups and Nets in Hyperbolic Groups. PhD Thesis, CalTech 2006. http://thesis.library.caltech.edu/2461/1/thesis.pdf
[McD] T. P. McDonough A permutation representation of a free group. Quart. J. Math. Oxford Ser. (2) 28 (1977), no. 111, 353-356.
[M-P] Eduardo Martinez-Pedroza On residual properties of word hyperbolic groups, GEOMETRIAE DEDICATA, to appear, http://www.springerlink.com/content/y70t6026j8486241.
[Min2005] A. Minasyan Some Properties of Subsets of Hyperbolic Groups, Comm. Algebra 33 (2005), no. 3, 909-935.
[MT] Michael L. Mihalik, Williams Towle Quasiconvex subgroups of negatively curved groups. Journal of Pure and Applied Algebra Volume 95, Issue 3, 29 August 1994, Pages 297-301
[Min] A. Minasyan On residual properties of word hyperbolic groups, J. of Group Theory 9 (2006), No. 5, pp. 695-714.
[MoSt] Soyoung Moon, Yves Stalder Highly transitive actions of free products. http://arxiv.org/abs/1203.5652
[LSch] M. Lyndon,P. Schupp, Combinatorial group theory. Springer, 1977.
[Olsh] A. Yu. Olshanskiy, Geometry of defining relations in groups. Kluwer, 1991.
[Olsh1] A. Yu. Olshanskiy, Almost every group is hyperbolic. IJAC Vol.2, No. 1 (1992) 1-17.
[Olsh93] A. Yu. Olshanskiy, On residualizing homomorphisms and G-subgroups of hyperbolic groups. IJAC, Vol.3, No.4, 1993.
[Olsh95] A. Yu. Olshanskiy, SQ-universality of hyperbolic groups. Mat. Sbornik, Vol.186, No. 8 (1995) 119-132. (in Russian).
[OlOsSa] Alexander Yu. Olshanskiy, Denis V Osin and Mark V Sapir, Lacunary hyperbolic groups. Geometry \& Topology 13, 2009, pp. 2051-2140.
[Rot] Joseph J. Rotman, An Introduction to the Theory of Groups (4th Edition).
[Swe] E. Swenson, Hyperbolic elements in negatively curved groups. Geometriae Dedicada
[Sta] J. R. Stallings, Topology of finite graphs. Invent. Math., 71 (1983), 551-565.


[^0]:    ${ }^{1}$ the term proposed by A. Olshanskiy.

[^1]:    ${ }^{2}$ While preparing this result for publication the author learned that a version of this statement has been presented by F. Dudkin and K. Sviridov in a Group Theory seminar at IM SORAN (Novosibirsk) in November, 2011.

[^2]:    ${ }^{1}$ Our formulation is less general then that in [Olsh93]. One can observe that in our case the condition (I)(c) follows from (I)(a)-(b).

